

HEADWAY

STUDENT'S BOOK

ELEMENTARY



Liz & John Soars

HEADWAY

STUDENT'S BOOK

ELEMENTARY

Liz & John Soars

Oxford University Press

STUDENT'S BOOK

| Unit | Grammar | Vocabulary | Everyday English |
|----------------------------------|---|--|---|
| 1 Hello! p6 | Verb <i>to be</i> <i>am/is/are</i> Possessive adjectives <i>my, your, her, his</i> | Names of countries p8 Using a bilingual dictionary p10 Everyday objects p11 <i>stamp, bag, key</i> Keeping a vocabulary book p11 | The alphabet p12 <i>How do you spell ...?</i> |
| 2 People p13 | Verb <i>to be</i> questions and negatives Possessive 's p14 <i>Martin's son</i> | Family relationships p15 <i>mother, uncle</i> Opposite adjectives p15 <i>old – young, big – small</i> | In a café p17 <i>Can I have a ...?</i> Food and drink p17 <i>a ham sandwich, a cup of tea</i> |
| 3 Work p19 | Present Simple (1) 3rd person <i>She teaches French.</i> questions and negatives p20 | Jobs p21 <i>A pilot flies a plane.</i> | What time is it? p24 <i>Can you tell me the time, please?</i> |
| 4 Free time p25 | Present Simple (2) all persons <i>On Saturdays I get up at 9.00.</i> <i>I love cooking!</i> Articles p27 <i>She's a student.</i> <i>I work for The Times.</i> <i>We go to work by car.</i> | Free time activities p28 <i>painting, sailing</i> play or go? p29 <i>play football</i> <i>go dancing</i> | Social English p30 <i>Excuse me.</i> <i>I'm sorry.</i> <i>Pardon?</i> |
| Stop and Check p32 | | | |
| 5 Places p34 | <i>There is/are</i> Prepositions of place p35 <i>The dog is in front of the fire.</i> <i>some and any with countable nouns p35</i> <i>There are some apples.</i> <i>Are there any oranges?</i> | Things in the house p34 <i>living room, armchair, mirror.</i> Places, people, food, and drink p38 <i>house, children, wine</i> | Directions (1) p39 <i>Excuse me! Is there a chemist's near here?</i> |
| 6 What can you do? p40 | <i>can/can't</i> <i>I can speak French, but I can't speak Japanese.</i> <i>was/were – could p41</i> <i>I could swim when I was five.</i> | Skills and abilities p41 <i>I can use a word processor.</i> Words that sound the same p44 <i>hear/here, see/sea</i> | At the airport p45 <i>Can I see your passport, please?</i> |
| 7 Then and now p47 | Past Simple (1) regular verbs <i>She started work in 1916.</i> questions and negatives p48 <i>When did she die?</i> irregular verbs p49 <i>He left school in 1982.</i> | Words with silent letters p52 <i>eight /eɪt/</i> <i>listen /lɪsn/</i> | Special occasions p52 <i>Happy Birthday!</i> <i>Merry Christmas!</i> |
| 8 How things began p54 | Past Simple (2) negatives and <i>ago</i> <i>People didn't watch TV 100 years ago.</i> Time expressions p56 <i>in 1924, on Tuesday</i> | Odd one out p57 <i>orange apple chicken</i> | Ordinals p59 <i>first, second, third</i> Dates <i>What's the date?</i> <i>It's 4 January.</i> |

Stop and Check p60

WORKBOOK

| Skills work | Grammar | Vocabulary | Writing |
|---|---|---|---|
| Listening and speaking p10 'Hello and goodbye' | <i>a or an ?</i> p8 <i>a boy, an apple</i> | Countries and nationalities p7 <i>Germany, German</i> Word stress p7 <i>Turkey, Japan</i> Numbers 1–100 p9 Telephone numbers p9 | |
| Reading and listening p16 Paola's letter Five conversations in Paola's day | Plural nouns p13 <i>books, buses, countries, people</i> | <i>What's the matter?</i> <i>I'm tired.</i> p12 Saying prices p13 <i>£1.50 – one pound fifty</i> | |
| Reading and listening p22 'The long-distance teacher' Listening and speaking p23 Five conversations in Frank's day | Spelling of 3rd person singular p15 <i>goes, washes, flies</i> Question words p16 <i>Where? How old?</i> | Daily routines p15 <i>get up, go to work</i> Verbs and nouns that go together p17 <i>cook dinner</i> | Personal pronouns and possessive adjectives p18 <i>I, me, my</i> Rewriting a text |
| Reading and listening p29 Three people talk about their free time and favourite season. Speaking p29 <i>What's your favourite season?</i> | Adverbs of frequency p22 <i>always, never</i> | Opposites p24 <i>love – hate</i> | An informal letter p24 A letter to a penfriend |
| Speaking and listening p35 Picture differences: the living room Reading p37 'Inside Buckingham Palace' Listening and speaking p38 <i>Where I live.</i> | <i>this/that/these/those</i> p28 <i>Do you like this photograph?</i> | Rooms and objects p27 <i>bathroom, soap</i> Numbers 100–1,000 p30 | Linking words p29 <i>and, so, but, because</i> Writing about where you live |
| Speaking p41 <i>What can computers do?</i> Reading and speaking (jigsaw) p43 'Two teenage geniuses' | <i>How much?</i> p32 <i>How much was it before?</i> | Saying years p34 1915 – nineteen fifteen Words that go together p34 <i>ask – a question</i> | A formal letter p35 A letter of application for a job |
| Speaking (information gap) p49 Queen Victoria and Prince Albert Reading p51 'Charles Dickens' | More irregular verbs p37 <i>began, wrote</i> | Parts of speech p40 <i>noun, verb, adjective, preposition</i> | Writing a paragraph p39 Describing a holiday |
| Reading and listening p55 'How things began' Listening and speaking (a picture story) p56 A Parisian burglar Listening and speaking p58 'How we met' | Compounds with <i>some-</i> and <i>any-</i> p44 <i>somebody, anybody</i> <i>somewhere, anywhere</i> <i>something, anything</i> | Inventions p44 <i>computer</i> <i>washing machine</i> | Linking words p45 <i>because, when, until</i> Describing your best friend |

STUDENT'S BOOK

| Unit | Grammar | Vocabulary | Everyday English |
|---|---|---|--|
| 9 Food and drink p62 | <i>like</i> and <i>would like</i> <i>I like apples.</i> <i>I'd like an apple.</i> <i>some</i> and <i>any</i> with countable and uncountable nouns p64 <i>There's some sugar.</i> <i>There aren't any eggs.</i> | Food and drink p62 Shops and things to buy p65 <i>newsagent's</i> <i>a phone card</i> Word search on food p67 | In a hotel p67 <i>Could I have a double room?</i> <i>Could you give me the bill?</i> |
| 10 Describing places p69 | Comparative adjectives <i>cheaper</i> <i>more expensive</i> <i>have got</i> and <i>have</i> p70 <i>I've got a good job.</i> <i>I have a good job.</i> Superlative adjectives p71 <i>the oldest</i> <i>the most modern</i> | Opposite adjectives p69 <i>clean – dirty</i> Town and country words p73 <i>traffic lights, field</i> | Directions (2) p75 prepositions of movement <i>past, through</i> |
| 11 Describing people p77 | Present Continuous <i>He's wearing glasses.</i> <i>Whose?</i> and possessive pronouns p79 <i>Whose is this dog?</i> <i>It's mine.</i> | Describing people p77 <i>He's got long hair.</i> Clothes and colours p77 <i>She's wearing a red suit.</i> Words that rhyme p80 <i>steak/wake</i> | In a clothes shop p82 <i>Can I try it on?</i> <i>will</i> for a decision <i>I'll have the blue jumper.</i> |
| 12 Planning the future p83 | <i>going to</i> future <i>I'm going to be a dancer.</i> Infinitive of purpose p84 <i>I'm going to Holland to see the tulips.</i> | The weather p88 <i>sunny, windy</i> <i>What's the weather like?</i> | Making suggestions p88 <i>What shall we do?</i> <i>Let's have a pizza.</i> |
| Stop and Check p90 | | | |
| 13 Did you know that? p92 | Question forms <i>How many ...?</i> <i>What sort ...?</i> <i>What happened ...?</i> Adverbs p94 <i>quickly, slowly</i> <i>well, hard</i> | Talking about a book p95 <i>What sort of story is it?</i> <i>What's it about?</i> | Catching a train p97 <i>A return ticket, please.</i> |
| 14 In my life p99 | Present Perfect with <i>ever</i> and <i>never</i> <i>I've never been to Canada.</i> with <i>yet</i> and <i>just</i> p100 <i>We haven't seen a show yet.</i> <i>I've just been in Central Park.</i> | Odd one out p104 <i>waitress nephew grandmother widow</i> | Telephoning p104 <i>Can I speak to Jo, please?</i> |
| 15 Thank you and goodbye p106 | Verb patterns <i>I want to go home.</i> <i>We enjoyed meeting you.</i> <i>It's easy to learn English.</i> <i>say and tell</i> p107 <i>She said that the party was good.</i> <i>She told me that the party was good.</i> | Multi-word verbs p108 <i>He took off his coat.</i> <i>The plane took off.</i> | Problems with officials p111 <i>You can't enter the country.</i> <i>have to</i> for obligation <i>You have to fill in a customs form.</i> |

Stop and Check p112

Tapescript section p114

Word list p123

Appendix 1 – Irregular verbs p127

Appendix 2 – verb patterns p127

WORKBOOK

Skills work

Speaking p62
Likes and dislikes
Roleplay p65
Going shopping
Reading and listening p66
'Meals in Britain'
Six mealtime conversations

Roleplay p71
A king and a queen
Reading and speaking
(jigsaw) p74
'Two capital cities'

Speaking p79
Picture differences: the
hotel pool
Listening and writing p78
Who's who at the party?
Listening p81
'Wonderful tonight' (a song)

Reading and speaking p86
Dangerous sports
'The Rock Star!'
Speaking (information gap) p88
What's the weather like today?

Speaking (information gap) p93
Laurel and Hardy
Listening and speaking p94
'In the middle of the night'
Reading and listening p96
A short story called
'The Girl with Green Eyes'

Listening and speaking p100
*What have you done in
your life?*
Reading and speaking p102
'Three amazing grandmas'

Speaking p108
Acting out dialogues
Reading and listening p109
'She's leaving home' (a song)

Grammar

*How much ...? or
How many ...? p49*
*How much homework
do you get?*
*How many languages do
you speak?*

Compounds with *every-*
and *no-* p55
everybody, nobody
everywhere, nowhere
everything, nothing

Present Simple and Present
Continuous p59
What do they do?
What are they doing?

Auxiliaries p64
am/is/are
do/does/did

Question forms p68
Which one?

been or gone? p74
Jane's gone to Portugal.
I've been to Portugal.

Obligation p78
have to/has to
*Policemen have to wear
a uniform.*

Vocabulary

Adjectives that describe food
and drink p49
brown bread
black coffee

Compound nouns p54
town centre
motorway

Parts of the body p61
back, knee

Word stress p65
● ● ● ●
airport guitar

Noun and adjective suffixes p70
colour – colourful
sun – sunny
-ing and -ed adjectives p70
bored – boring

What is it? p74
*It's very interesting. I've just
read chapter 10.*
It = a book/novel

Noun suffixes and word
stress p78
● ● ● ● ●
describe description
Words that are nouns and verbs p79
cook, love

Writing

Formal and informal letters p51
A letter to a hotel and a
letter to a friend

Relative pronouns p56
who, that, which
Writing about your
capital city

Linking words p61
although, because of
Describing two people in
your family

Writing a postcard p66

Adverbs p70
happy – happily
Writing a story p71
Once upon a time

Filling in a form p75

A thank-you letter p80
paragraphing
writing an envelope

UNIT 1

am/is/are – Possessive adjectives – Spelling

Hello!

PRESENTATION (1)

T1a Read and listen.

- A Hello. My name's Jenny. What's your name?
B Anna.
A Where are you from, Anna?
B I'm from New York.



name's = name is
what's = what is
I'm = I am

Practice

1 Writing and listening

Complete the conversation.

A Hello. My _____ Thomas.

What's _____ name?

B Johann.

A _____ are you from, Johann?

B _____ from Berlin.

Where _____ you from?

A _____ Oxford.

T1b Listen and check.



2 Speaking

Stand up!

Talk to the students in the class.

Hello! My name's _____.
What's your name?

Anna.

Where are you
from, Anna?

I'm from _____.

PRESENTATION (2)

Read about Manuel.

My name's Manuel Garcia and I'm a doctor. I'm thirty.
I'm married and I have two children. I live in a house in Seville
in the south of Spain. I want to learn English for my job.



Practice

1 Writing and listening

Complete the text about Mayumi.

My name's Mayumi Kimura and I'm _____ student.

I _____ nineteen years old. I'm not married. I have two
brothers and a _____. I _____ in a flat in Osaka, Japan.

I _____ to learn English because it's an international
_____.



T2 Listen and check.

2 Writing and speaking

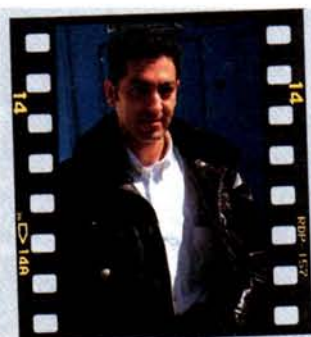
Write about you. Then read it to the class.

PRESENTATION (3)

- 1 **T3** Look at the stress marks. Practise saying the countries.

| | •• | •• | ••• |
|--------|---------|--------|---------|
| France | England | Brazil | Germany |
| Spain | Egypt | Japan | Mexico |
| Greece | Russia | | Hungary |
| | | | Italy |

- 2 Look at the photographs and read the words.



Buenos días!

This is Manuel.
He's from Spain.



Konnichiwa!

This is Mayumi.
She's from Japan.



*Hello!
Hello!*

This is Mike and Rosie.
They're from England.

- 3 Write where the people are from. Choose one of the countries in Exercise 1.

Bonjour!

This is Jean-Paul.



Guten Tag!

This is Johann.



*Salem ala
gaum!*

This is Fatima.



Buongiorno!

This is Paola.



Hairtai!

This is Christina.



He's = He is
They're = They are



Bom dia!
Bom dia!

This is Clara and Bruno.



Privet!

This is Ivan.



¡Buenos días!

This is Pablo.



Szia!
Szia!

This is János and Irén.

Practice

1 Speaking

1 Work in pairs.

Ask and answer questions about the people in the photographs.

What's his name?

Manuel.

Where's he from?

Spain.

What's her name?

Mayumi.

Where's she from?

Japan.

2 Ask and answer the same questions about the students in the class.

2 Listening and pronunciation

T4 Tick (✓) the sentence you hear.

- 1 a She's from Spain.
b He's from Spain.
- 2 a I'm sixteen.
b I'm sixty.
- 3 a His name's Pat.
b Her name's Pat.
- 4 a They're from Britain.
b They're from Brazil.
- 5 a Where's she from?
b Where's he from?
- 6 a He's a teacher in France.
b His teacher in France.

3 Grammar

Put *am*, *is*, *are*, *his*, or *her* into the gaps.

Example

My name is Anna.

- a Where _____ you from?
- b I _____ from Italy.
- c 'What's _____ name?' 'Peter.'
- d Christina _____ twenty-nine years old.
- e Mike and Rosie _____ from London.
- f Clara _____ married.
- g 'What's _____ name?' 'Mayumi.'
- h He _____ a doctor.
- i I have a daughter. _____ name's Kate.
- j János and Irén _____ married. They have a son.

4 Choosing the correct sentence

One sentence has a mistake. Choose the correct sentence. Put ✓ and ✗.

Examples

His from Greece. ✗

He's from Greece. ✓

She's a teacher. ✓

She's teacher. ✗

- 1 a Where she from?
b Where's she from?
- 2 a What's her name?
b What's she's name?
- 3 a I'm a student.
b I'm student.
- 4 a She is twenty-nine years old.
b She has twenty-nine years old.
- 5 a I live in flat.
b I live in a flat.
- 6 a I have two sisters.
b I have two sister.
- 7 a They from Japan.
b They're from Japan.
- 8 a He's a doctor.
b His a doctor.
- 9 a He's name's Bruno.
b His name's Bruno.
- 10 a Her surname is Smith.
b Her surname it's Smith.

● LISTENING AND SPEAKING

Hello and goodbye

1 Write the conversations in the correct order.



a Fine, thank you. And you?
I'm OK, thanks.
Hello, Mary. How are you?

A _____

B _____

A



b Not bad, thanks. And you?
Very well. How are the
children?
Hi, Dave! How are you?
They're fine.

A _____

B _____

A _____

B _____



c Goodbye, Anne. Have a nice evening.
Thanks, Chris. See you tomorrow!
Goodbye, Chris.

A _____

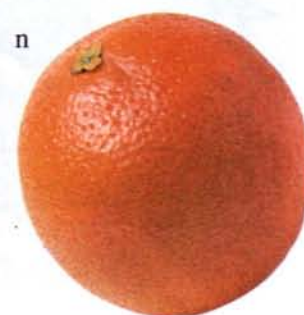
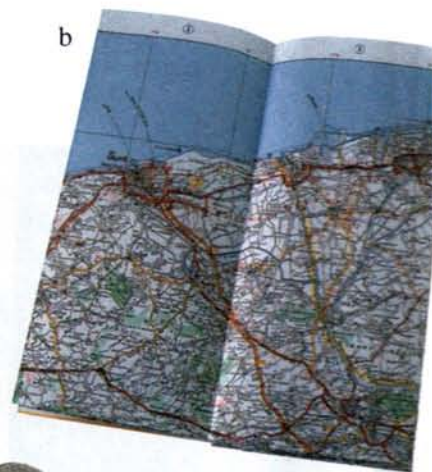
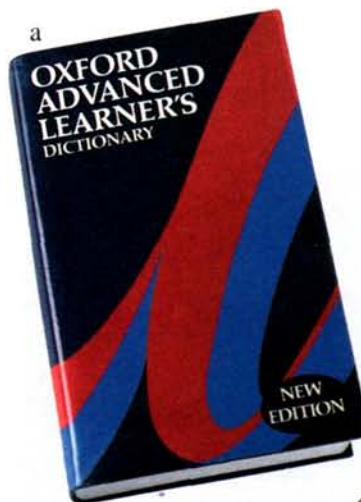
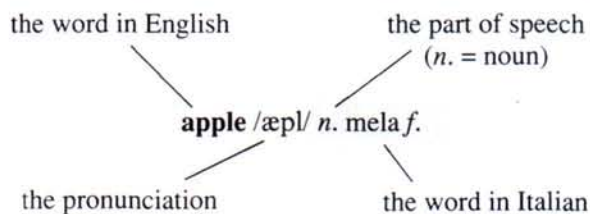
B _____

A _____

● VOCABULARY AND PRONUNCIATION

1 Using a bilingual dictionary

Look at the extract from the *Oxford Italian Minidictionary*.



T5 Listen and check.

2 Stand up! Have conversations with other students.

2 What's this in English?

- 1 Use your dictionary and match a word in the box with an object in the photographs.

Example

a It's a dictionary.

| | ● ● | ● ● ● | ● ● ● ● |
|---------|------------|--------------|------------|
| a stamp | an apple | a dictionary | a magazine |
| a bag | a postcard | an envelope | |
| a map | a ticket | a newspaper | |
| a key | a notebook | | |
| | an orange | | |
| | a letter | | |
| | a suitcase | | |
| | a camera | | |

- 2 **T6** Look at the stress marks (● ●). Listen and practise saying the words.

- 3 Look at the words.

an apple an envelope
an orange a bag
a ticket an English book

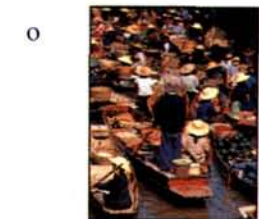
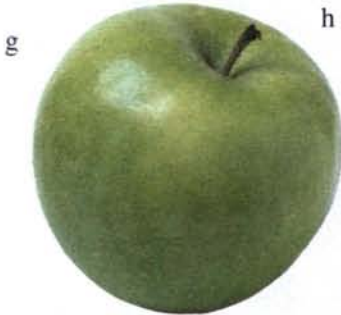
When is it *a*? When is it *an*?

What are the letters *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, and *u*?

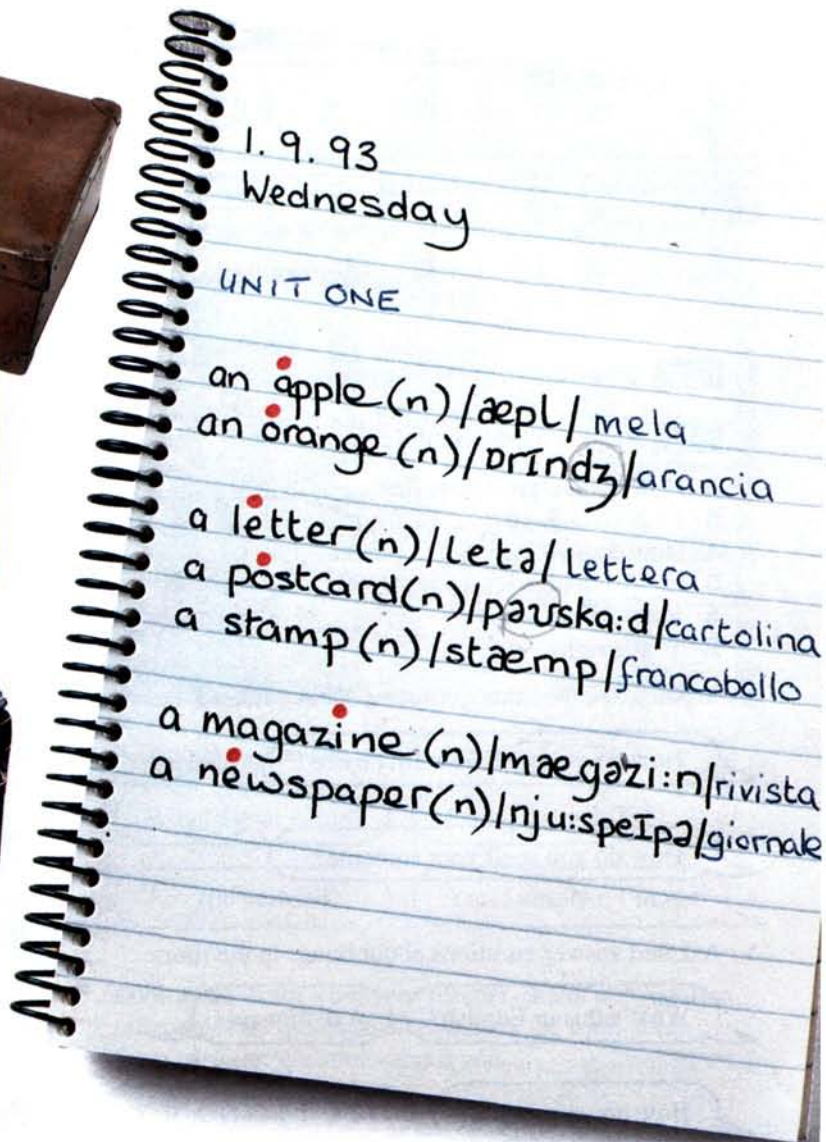
3 A vocabulary notebook

Buy a notebook and write the new words in it. Translate the words.

This is an Italian student's notebook. Look at how she writes the stress marks.



THAILAND



● EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Spelling

- 1 **T 7a** Listen to the letters of the alphabet.
Practise saying them.

/eɪ/ a h j k
/i:/ b c d e g p t v
/e/ f l m n s x z
/aɪ/ i y
/əʊ/ o
/u:/ q u w
/ɑ:/ r

- 2 **T 7b** Listen to the alphabet song. Sing it!



- 3 **T 7c** Listen and write the words you hear.

- 4 **T 7d** Read and listen to the conversation.

A How do you spell your first name?
B J - A - M - E - S.
A How do you spell your surname?
B H - A - double R - I - S - O - N.
A James Harrison.
B That's right.

In pairs, ask the same questions. Write the answers.

How do you spell your first name?

How do you spell your surname?

- 5 Ask and answer questions about things in the room.

What's this in English?

A dictionary.

How do you spell it?

D-I-C-T-I-O-N-A-R-Y.

What's this in English?

I don't know.

GRAMMAR SUMMARY

Verb to be

Positive

| | | |
|-------------------|-----|---------------|
| I | am | from England. |
| He She It | is | |
| We You They | are | |

I'm = I am
He's = He is
She's = She is
It's = It is
We're = We are
You're = You are
They're = They are

Question

| | | | |
|-------|-----|-------------------|-------|
| Where | am | I | from? |
| | is | he she it | |
| | are | we you they | |

I'm 20

I'm 20.
I'm 20 years old.

NOT I'm 20 years.
I have 20 years.

Possessive adjectives

| | | |
|---------|---|--------|
| What's | my your his her its our your their | name? |
| This is | | house. |

What's = What is

a/an

| | |
|--------|-------------------------------------|
| It's a | ticket. dictionary. magazine. |
|--------|-------------------------------------|

We use *an* before a vowel.

| | |
|---------|--|
| It's an | apple. envelope. English dictionary. |
|---------|--|

Prepositions

Where are you **from**?
I live **in** a flat **in** Paris.
What's this **in** English?

Study the Word List for this unit on page 123.

UNIT 2

Questions and negatives – Possessive 's – Prices – Can I have ...?

People

PRESENTATION (1)

Questions and negatives

- T8** Write the numbers and phone numbers you hear.
- Read about Mary Hopkins.

| | | |
|--|-----------------|------------------------------|
|  | SURNAME | HOPKINS |
| | FIRST NAME | MARY |
| | COUNTRY | England |
| | JOB | Journalist |
| | ADDRESS | 35, North Street, Bristol |
| | PHONE NUMBER | 0272 478 2209 |
| | AGE | 23 |
| | MARRIED? | No |

- Complete the questions.
 - What's her surname? Hopkins.
 - _____ her first name? Mary.
 - _____ she _____? England.
 - _____ job? She's a journalist.
 - What's _____? 35 North Street, Bristol.
 - _____ phone number? 0272 478 2209.
 - How old _____? Twenty-three.
 - Is she _____? No, she isn't.

T9 Listen and check. Practise saying the questions and answers.

- Ask your teacher questions about Mary's brother.


What's his first name?

Practice

1 Speaking

- Student A Look at the information on this page.
- Student B Look at the information from your teacher.

Ask and answer questions to complete the information.

| | | |
|---|-----------------|-------------------------------|
|  | SURNAME | PETERS |
| | FIRST NAME | |
| | COUNTRY | Scotland |
| | JOB | |
| | ADDRESS | 62, Church Street, Glasgow |
| | PHONE NUMBER | |
| | AGE | 47 |
| | MARRIED? | |

- Ask your teacher the same questions.

What's your name?

Rosa Gonzalez.

Are you married?

Yes, I am./No, I'm not.

- Look at the form from your teacher. Stand up! Ask two other students questions to complete the form about them. Answer questions about you.
- Tell the class about one of the students.

Her name's Anne-Marie. She's from Strasbourg.

2 Negatives and short answers



- 1 Look at the negative forms.
 She **isn't** married.
 You **aren't** English.
 But: I'm not a doctor. NOT ~~I am~~'t a doctor.
- 2 Look at the short answers to Yes/No questions.
 Is Mary English? **Yes, she is.** (she = Mary)
 Is her surname Atkins? **No, it isn't.** (it = surname)
 Are you a doctor? **No, I'm not.**

- 1 Ask and answer Yes/No questions about Mary and Martin.

About Mary

Example

French? German? English?

Is she French?

No, she isn't.

Is she German?

No, she isn't.

Is she English?

Yes, she is.

- a a doctor? a teacher? a journalist?
- b eighteen? twenty-one? twenty-three?

About Martin

- c Smith? Jones? Peters?
- d American? English? Scottish?
- e a taxi driver? a shop assistant? a policeman?

- 2 Ask Yes/No questions about the students in the class.

Juan, are you married?

No, I'm not.

Is Maria a student?

Yes, she is.

3 Grammar

Make true sentences!

- a We _____ in class.
- b It _____ Monday today.
- c I _____ at home.
- d The teacher's name _____ David.
- e My parents _____ at work.
- f I _____ married.
- g Champagne _____ a drink from Portugal.
- h Egypt and Morocco _____ in Europe. They _____ in Africa.

PRESENTATION (2)

Possessive 's

T 10 Look at the photograph of Martin Peters with his family. Read and listen to the text. Write the names of the people in the correct places.

This is a photo of Martin, his wife, and his children. His wife's name is Jennifer. She's a dentist. His daughter's name is Alison. She's twenty-three and she's a hairdresser. His son's name is Andy. He's nineteen and he's a student. Alison's boyfriend is a travel agent. His name is Joe.



His wife's name

's = possession. It is *not* the short form of *is*.

She's a dentist.

His wife's name = her name

She's = She is. *Is* is part of the verb *to be*.

● Grammar question

Find other examples in the text of 's = possession, and 's = is.

Practice

1 Speaking

- 1 Ask and answer questions about Martin's family.

Who's Jennifer?

She's Martin's wife.

- 2 Ask your teacher questions about the names of his/her family.

What's your mother's name?

What's your sister's name?

2 Vocabulary

Use your dictionary and fill in the gaps.

| | |
|-------------|--------|
| husband | wife |
| son | |
| father | |
| | sister |
| uncle | |
| | niece |
| grandfather | |

3 Speaking

Write down the names of some of the people in your family. Work in pairs. Ask your partner questions about his/her family.

Who's Juan?

He's my brother.

Who's Sylvie?

She's my aunt. She's my mother's sister.

4 Choosing the correct sentence

One sentence has a mistake. Choose the correct sentence. Put ✓ and ✗.

- a He's a engineer.

b He's an engineer.
- a I'm a hairdresser.

b I'm hairdresser.
- a I have twenty-one years old.

b I am twenty-one years old.
- a My sister's name is Carmen.

b My sisters name is Carmen.
- a She isn't married.

b She no married.
- a I have two brothers.

b I have two brother.
- a Where Wolfgang from?

b Where's Wolfgang from?
- a That's Peter's book.

b That's the book of Peter.

VOCABULARY

Adjectives

- 1 Use your dictionary and match the opposites.

Example

old – young

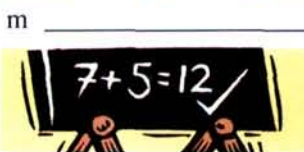
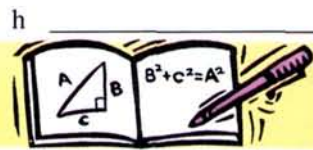
| | | | |
|-----------|----------|--------|-------|
| difficult | horrible | lovely | easy |
| expensive | cold | small | right |
| old | cheap | old | young |
| hot | new | big | wrong |

- 2 Write a sentence for each picture, using a word from Exercise 1.



a It's big.

b It's small.



o _____

p _____

T11 Listen and check. Practise saying the sentences.

READING AND LISTENING

T 12a Paola is an Italian student of English at a school in London. Read and listen to her letter to David, her penfriend.



72 Newton Drive
London SW6

3rd October

Dear David

How are you? I'm fine. I'm in London, at the International School of English. I'm in class 3 with eight other students. They're all from different countries - Spain, France, Japan, Argentina, Switzerland, and Thailand. Our teacher's name is Peter Briscall. He's very nice. He's funny and he's a very good teacher.

My new address is at the top of the letter. I'm with an English family, the Browns. Mr and Mrs Brown have three children. Thomas is fourteen, Catherine is twelve, and Andrew is seven. They are all very friendly, but it isn't easy to understand them!

London is very big and very interesting. The weather is good - cold but sunny - and the parks are beautiful! Hyde Park, Green Park, and St James' Park are all in the centre. It isn't easy to use the Underground, but I understand it now. It's very expensive!

English food is OK, but the coffee is horrible!

Write to me soon.

Love, Paola

P.S. Is my English OK?



Comprehension check

1 Match a picture with a part of the letter.

2 Are the sentences true (✓) or false (✗)?

Examples

Paola is Italian. ✓

She's in Rome. ✗ *No, she isn't. She's in London.*

- Paola's happy in London.
- She's on holiday.
- It's a very big class.
- The students in her class are all from Europe.
- Mr and Mrs Brown have two sons and a daughter.
- The Underground is cheap.
- The food in London is horrible.

3 Here are the answers to some questions about Paola's letter. Write the questions.

Example

Where's she from?

Italy.

a _____?
Spain, France, Japan, Argentina, Switzerland, and Thailand.

b _____?
Peter Briscall.

c _____?
Fourteen.

d _____?
Yes, it is. Cold but sunny.

e _____?
No, it isn't. It's horrible.

4 **T 12b** Listen to five conversations Paola has in London. Who is she with? Where is she?

Writing

Write a similar letter to a friend about your class.



EVERYDAY ENGLISH

In a café

1 Look at the menu. Check the meaning of new words in your dictionary.

| Kate's Corner Café | | |
|--|----------------|-------|
| <i>Sandwiches</i> | | |
|  | Ham | £1 50 |
|  | Cheese | £1 50 |
|  | Tuna | £1 70 |
|  | Chicken | £2 00 |
| <i>Piece of pizza</i> | | |
|  | Piece of pizza | 90p |
|  | Hamburger | £2 50 |
| <i>Ice Cream</i> | | |
|  | Ice Cream | 80p |
| <i>Cup of tea</i> | | |
|  | Cup of tea | 50p |
|  | Cup of coffee | 70p |
|  | Coke | 60p |
|  | Orange juice | 60p |
|  | Mineral water | 20p |

2 **T 13a** Listen and repeat.

3 Ask and answer questions.

How much is a tuna sandwich?

One pound seventy.

How much is a chicken sandwich and a mineral water?

Two pounds eighty.

4 **T 13b** Listen to the conversations and complete them.

- a A Hello.
B Hello. Can I have a _____, please?
A Here you are.
Anything else?
B No, thanks.
A One pound _____, please.
B Thanks.
A Thank you.
- b A Hi.
B Hello. Can I have a cheese sandwich, please?
A Anything to drink?
B Yes. A _____, please.
A OK. Here you are.
B _____ is that?
A One pound eighty, please.
B Thanks.
- c A Good morning.
B Morning.
A _____ a hamburger and a cup of coffee, please?
B OK. _____
A Thanks. How much is that?
B _____ twenty.
A One, two, three pounds ... twenty p.
B Thanks.
A Thank you.



GRAMMAR SUMMARY

Verb to be

Questions with question words

| | | |
|----------|---|-------|
| What | is her surname? is his job? is her address? | |
| Where | is she are you are they | from? |
| Who | is Jennifer? is she? | |
| How old | is he? are you? | |
| How much | is a Coke? | |

Lucas.
He's a policeman.
34, Church Street.
Portugal.
She's John's daughter.
Twenty-two.
Sixty pence.

Yes/No questions

| | | |
|-----|-----------------|----------|
| Is | he she it | hot? |
| Are | you they | married? |

Short answers

Yes, he is.
No, she isn't.
Yes, it is.
No, I'm not./No, we aren't.
Yes, they are.

Negative

| | | | |
|-------------------|-----|-----|------------------|
| I | am | | |
| He She It | is | not | from the States. |
| We You They | are | | |

I'm not = I am not (I-amn't)
He isn't = He is not
She isn't = She is not
It isn't = It is not
We aren't = We are not
You aren't = You are not
They aren't = They are not

Possessive 's

My husband's name is Martin.
That's Andrea's dictionary.

Prepositions

I'm **in** London. I'm **in** class 3 **with** eight other students.
Green Park is **in** the centre.

I'm **at** home. My parents are **at** work.
I'm **at** the International School of Languages.

She isn't **on** holiday.
This is a photo **of** my family.

Study the Word List for this unit on page 123.

5 Work in pairs. Practise the conversations, then make more conversations. Use real British money if you can!

UNIT 3

Present Simple (1) – *What time is it?*

Work

PRESENTATION (1)

Present Simple

- 1 **T14** Look at the photographs. Read and listen to the texts.



Sister Mary comes from Ireland. She is a nun and she lives and works in a girls' school in Cork. She teaches French and Spanish. She likes her job and she loves the green countryside of Ireland. She goes walking in her free time.

Hans Huser is a ski-instructor. He is Swiss and lives in Villars, a village in the mountains. In summer he works in a sports shop and in winter he teaches skiing. He speaks four languages, French, German, Italian, and English. He is married and has two sons. He plays football with them in his free time.



● Grammar questions

- Underline the verbs in the texts.

Examples

comes is

- What is the last letter of these verbs?
- 2 In pairs, practise saying the verbs. Read one of the texts aloud.

Practice

1 Grammar

Complete the sentences about Sister Mary and Hans.

- a She comes from Ireland. He _____ Switzerland.
- b He lives in a village, but she _____ a town.
- c She works in a school. He _____ a sports shop.
- d He _____ skiing. She _____ and Spanish.
- e She _____ near the sea, but he _____ in the mountains.
- f He likes his job and she _____, too.
- g He _____ sons.
- h She _____ walking in her free time. He _____ with his sons.
- i He _____ four languages. She _____ three.

2 Speaking

Look at the photograph of Georges and the information. Make sentences about him.

Georges is a taxi driver. He comes from France and he lives in Paris.

He works ...

He isn't ...

He has ...

... in his free time.

In pairs, talk about Keiko and Mark.



| | |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Georges Teste | a taxi driver |
| Country | France |
| Town | Paris |
| Place of work | in the centre of Paris |
| Married? | No |
| Family | a dog (!) |
| Free time | walking with his dog and football |



| | |
|----------------------|----------------------------------|
| Keiko Wilson | an interpreter |
| Country | Japan |
| Town | New York |
| Place of work | at the United Nations |
| Languages | Japanese, English, and Russian |
| Family | married to an American, two sons |
| Free time | skiing |



| | |
|----------------------|------------------------------|
| Mark King | a journalist for the BBC |
| Country | England |
| Town | Moscow |
| Place of work | in an office |
| Languages | English, Russian, and German |
| Family | married, three daughters |
| Free time | tennis |

3 Writing

Write about a friend, or your mother or father.

Example

My friend Anna is a student. She lives in ...

PRESENTATION (2)

Questions and negatives

- 1 **T 15a** Read and listen to the questions and answers. Practise saying them.

Where does Sister Mary come from? Ireland.
What does she do? She's a teacher.
Does she speak French? Yes, she does.
Does she speak German? No, she doesn't.



- 1 *Does* is an auxiliary verb in questions with *he, she, and it*. *Doesn't (= does not)* is in negative sentences.

She comes from Ireland.
Where **does** she come from? She **does** n't come from England.

- 2 Notice the pronunciation of *does* and *doesn't*.

/dɒz/ /dɒz/ /dɒznt/
Does she speak French? Yes, she does./No, she doesn't.

- 3 Where does she come from? = Where's she from?

- 4 What does he do? = What's his job?

- 2 Complete the questions and answers.

a Where _____ Hans _____ from? Switzerland.
b What _____ he _____? He's a ski-instructor.
c _____ he _____ French and German? Yes, he _____.
d _____ he _____ Spanish? No, he _____.

- T 15b** Listen and check.

Practice

1 Writing and speaking

- 1 Write questions about Georges, Keiko, and Mark.

Example

Where/come from? *Where does he come from?*

- a Where/live?
b What/do?
c Where/work?
d Does he/she speak French/Spanish ...?
e What ... in his/her free time?
f ... play tennis?
g How many children ...?
h ... a dog?

2 Work in pairs. Ask and answer your questions, but don't look at the information.

3 Now ask your partner the same questions about a member of his or her family.

2 Listening and pronunciation

1 **T 16a** Listen to the sentences about Georges, Keiko, and Mark. Some are right and some are wrong. Correct the wrong sentences.

Example

Georges comes from Paris. Yes, that's right.

Georges lives in London. No, he doesn't. He lives in Paris.

2 **T 16b** Tick (✓) the sentence you hear.

- 1 a He likes his job.
b She likes her job.
- 2 a She loves walking.
b She loves working.
- 3 a She's married.
b She isn't married.
- 4 a Does she have three children?
b Does he have three children?
- 5 a What does he do?
b Where does he go?
- 6 a She watches the television.
b She washes the television.

3 Choosing the correct sentence

One sentence has a mistake. Choose the correct sentence. Put ✓ and ✗.

- 1 a She comes from Spain.
b She come from Spain.
- 2 a What he do in his free time?
b What does he do in his free time?
- 3 a Where lives she?
b Where does she live?
- 4 a He isn't married.
b He doesn't married.
- 5 a Does she has two sons?
b Does she have two sons?
- 6 a He doesn't play football.
b He no plays football.
- 7 a She doesn't love Peter.
b She doesn't loves Peter.
- 8 a What's he's address?
b What's his address?

VOCABULARY AND PRONUNCIATION

Jobs

1 Use your dictionary and match a picture with a job in column A.



2 Match a line in A with a line in B.

- A
- f A pilot
 - An interpreter
 - A hairdresser
 - A singer
 - A nurse
 - An actor
 - A mechanic
 - A journalist
 - A receptionist
 - A baker
 - A shop assistant

- B
- makes bread.
 - looks after people in hospital.
 - writes for a newspaper.
 - works in a hotel.
 - translates things.
 - sells things.
 - flies a plane.
 - works in a night club.
 - cuts hair.
 - mends cars.
 - makes films.

3 Look at the phonetic spelling of some of the words. Practise saying them.

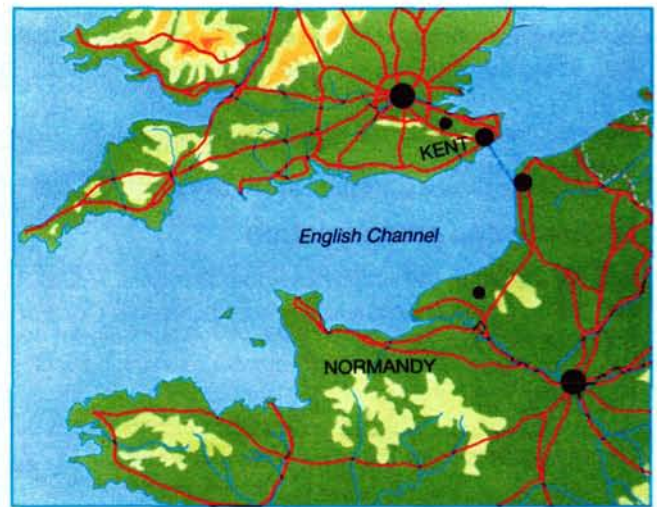
- a /nɜːs/ b /ɪntɜːprɪtə/ c /rɪsɪpʃənɪst/
d /æktə/ e /sɪŋə/ f /məkənɪk/

4 Memorize the lines in A and B! Close your books. Ask and answer questions.

READING AND LISTENING

Pre-reading task

- 1 Look at the map. Which two countries are they?
Write the names of the capital cities on the map.
- 2 Check the meaning of the underlined words in your dictionary.
He leaves home.
She drives to work.
He catches a train at 9.00.
a ferry
She arrives at work at 8.30.
The journey takes twenty minutes.
It costs only ten pence.
fortunately



Reading

Read the text. Answer the three questions.

- a Where does Mr Garret live?
- b What's his job?
- c Where does he work?

The long-distance teacher



Mr Frank Garret, 65, is a schoolteacher. He is English, but he lives in France, in the Normandy village of Yerville. Mr Garret lives in France, but he works in England.

Every Monday he leaves home at 2.30 in the morning and drives 101 miles from his village to Boulogne, where he leaves his car and catches the ferry to Folkestone. Then he catches the train to Maidstone in Kent and he arrives at Manor School at 8.25. He teaches French from 9.00 in the morning to 3.30 in the afternoon, and then leaves school. He arrives home at 9.30 in the evening. The journey there and back takes twelve hours and costs only £16!

Fortunately, Mr Garret works in England only one day a week.

And what does he do on the other days? He teaches English! He has a class of eighteen French students in Yerville.

'Yes, on Tuesdays I'm tired,' he says, 'but I love my job in England and I love my home in France. I'm a happy man!'



Comprehension check

- Write Folkestone, Boulogne, Maidstone, and Yerville on the map. Mark Mr Garret's journey.
- Answer the questions.
 - Is Mr Garret French?
 - How many jobs does he have?
 - Does he go to Boulogne by train?
 - Where does he leave his car?
 - Where does he catch the train?
 - Is the journey cheap or expensive? How much does it cost?
 - Does Mr Garret go to Manor School every day?
 - Why does Mr Garret live in France but work in England? (*Because ...*)

- Complete the text about Mr Garret's journey back home from his school.

Mr Garret _____ Manor School at 3.30 in the afternoon and he _____ the train to Folkestone, where he _____ the ferry to Boulogne.

Then he _____ from Boulogne back to his village. The journey _____ six hours. He _____ home at 9.30.

Language work

Complete the questions.

Example

What time *does he* leave home in the morning?
At 2.30.

- What time _____ at Manor School?
At 8.25.
- What time _____ ?
At 3.30.
- When _____ home in the evening?
At 9.30.
- How much _____ the journey _____ ?
Sixteen pounds.
- How long _____ the journey home _____ ?
Six hours.
- How many students _____ he _____ in his English class?
Eighteen.

Listening and speaking

- T 17** Listen to five conversations from Frank Garret's day and complete them.

- A _____, sir. Can I see your _____ ?
B Yes, of course. Here you _____ .
A Thank you. Maidstone next _____ .
B Thank you.
- A _____, boys and girls.
B _____, Mr Garret.
A _____ your homework, please?
B It's on your _____, Mr Garret.
A Thank you.
- A _____, Frank. Have a good _____ .
B Thank you very _____ .
A See you next _____ !
B Yes, _____ course. Goodbye!
- A _____ . Is this seat _____ ?
B Yes, it is.
A Thank you. It's _____ this evening.
B _____ certainly _____ . And the sea's very _____ !
- A Hello, darling! Are you _____ ?
B Yes, I am. And _____ .
A Sit down and _____ a glass of wine.
B Mmmm! Thank you. I'm _____, too.

- What time of day is it, morning, afternoon, or evening? Where are they? Who are the people? Choose from the boxes.

Places

at home
on the ferry
on the train
at school

People

Frank's wife
a teacher
school children
a ticket inspector
a ferry passenger

- Work in pairs and practise the conversations.

● EVERYDAY ENGLISH

What time is it?

- 1 Look at the clocks. Write the times. Practise saying them.



It's five o'clock.



It's half past five.



It's quarter past five.

It's quarter to six.



It's five past five.



It's twenty-five past five.



It's twenty to six.

It's ten to six.

T 18a Listen and check.

- 2 Look at the times.



It's exactly half past three.



It's nearly half past three.



It's just after half past three.

- 3 **T 18b** In pairs, draw clocks on a piece of paper. Practise the conversations.

Excuse me. Can you tell me the time, please?

Yes, of course. It's six o'clock.

Thanks.

I'm sorry. I don't know. I don't have a watch.

GRAMMAR SUMMARY

Present Simple *he, she, it*

Positive

| | | |
|-----------------|-------|-------------------|
| He She It | lives | in the mountains. |
|-----------------|-------|-------------------|

Have is irregular.

She **has** a dog.

NOT ~~she~~ ~~haves~~

Negative

| | | | | |
|-----------------|----------|------|------------|--------------------|
| He She It | does not | live | in France. | doesn't = does not |
|-----------------|----------|------|------------|--------------------|

Question

| | | | |
|-------|------|-----------------|-------|
| Where | does | he she it | live? |
|-------|------|-----------------|-------|

Yes/No questions

| | | | |
|------|-----------------|------|---------------------------------|
| Does | he she it | live | in France? in the mountains? |
|------|-----------------|------|---------------------------------|

Short answers

Yes, he does.
No, she doesn't.
Yes, it does.

Prepositions

She works **in** a girls' school.

He lives **in** a village **in** the mountains.

In winter he teaches skiing.

On Tuesdays I'm tired.

He plays football **with** his sons **in** his free time.

She is married **to** an American.

A nurse looks **after** people in a hospital.

He arrives **at** school **at** 8.45.

He catches a train **to** London.

He drives **from** his village **to** Boulogne.

He goes **to** Boulogne **by** train.

No preposition

He leaves **___** home at 8.00.

He arrives **___** home at 9.30.

Study the Word List for this unit on page 123.

UNIT 4

Present Simple (2) – Articles – Social English

Free time

PRESENTATION (1)

Present Simple

- 1 Practise saying the days of the week round the class.
- 2 Look at the photograph and read about Ann McGregor.



Ann McGregor lives in London. She is thirty-four and works for the BBC. She interviews people on an early morning news programme called *The World Today*. Every weekday she gets up at 3.00 in the morning because the programme starts at 6.30. She loves her work because it is exciting and she meets a lot of very interesting people, but she loves her weekends, too.

- 3 Look at the verbs in the box. Check the meaning of new verbs in your dictionary.

| | | | | | |
|-------|-------|--------|--------|--------|-------|
| love | relax | stay | cook | have | like |
| chat | eat | go | live | arrive | come |
| visit | bring | listen | go out | get up | leave |

- 4 **T 19a** Read and listen to what Ann says about her weekends.

On Fridays I _____ home from the BBC at about 2.00 in the afternoon and I just _____.

On Friday evenings I don't _____, but sometimes a friend _____ for dinner. He or she _____ the wine and I _____ the meal. I _____ cooking! We _____ to music or we just _____.

On Saturday mornings I _____ at 9.00 and I _____ shopping. Then in the evenings I sometimes _____ to the theatre or the opera with a friend. I _____ opera! Then we _____ in my favourite Chinese restaurant.

On Sunday... Oh, on Sunday mornings I _____ in bed late, I don't _____ until 11.00! Sometimes in the afternoon I _____ my sister. She _____ in the country and _____ two children. I _____ playing with my niece and nephew, but I _____ early because I _____ to bed at 8.00 on Sunday evenings!

- 5 Fill in the gaps with the correct form of the verbs in the box. Listen again and check. Read the text aloud.

● Grammar questions

- Find four verbs which end in -s. Why do they end in -s?
- Find two negatives.
- Complete the rules.

In the Present Simple positive we add _____ to the verb with *he*, *she*, and *it*, but not with *I*, *you*, *we*, and *they*.

With *I*, *you*, *we*, and *they*, the negative is _____ + infinitive. With *he*, *she*, and *it*, the negative is _____ + infinitive.

PRESENTATION (2)

Questions

- T 19b** Read and listen to the questions and answers. Practise saying them.
 Do you go out on Friday afternoons? No, I don't.
 What do you do? I just relax.
 Do you stay at home on Friday evenings? Yes, I do.
 What do you do? I cook dinner for friends.
- Work in pairs. One of you is Ann McGregor. Ask and answer questions about:
 Saturday mornings/evenings
 Sunday mornings/afternoons/evenings

Grammar question

Complete the rule.

The auxiliary verb in questions with *I, you, we, and they* is _____. With *he, she, and it* the auxiliary verb is _____.

Practice

1 Questions and answers

Match a line in A with a line in B to make a question. Then find an answer in C.

| Questions | | Answers |
|-----------|---------------------------------|---------------------------|
| A | B | C |
| What time | do you like your job? | My grandmother. |
| Where | do you travel to work? | To a disco. |
| What | do you go on Saturday evenings? | After dinner. |
| When | do you visit on Sundays? | At 11 o'clock. |
| Who | do you go to bed? | I watch TV. |
| Why | do you do in the evenings? | Because it's interesting. |
| How | do you do your homework? | By train. |

2 Speaking

- Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about your weekdays and weekends.

What time do you get up on weekdays?

At 7.00.

Do you go out on Friday evenings?

Yes, I do.

Where do you go?

To the disco.

- Tell the class about you and your partner.

Maria goes to the disco on Friday evenings and I usually watch TV.

3 Listening and pronunciation

T 20 Tick (✓) the sentence you hear.

- a What does he do on Sundays?
 b What does she do on Sundays?
- a I stay at home on Tuesday evenings.
 b I stay at home on Thursday evenings.
- a He lives here.
 b He leaves here.
- a I read a lot.
 b I eat a lot.
- a Where do you go on Saturday evenings?
 b What do you do on Saturday evenings?
- a She likes cars.
 b She likes cards.

4 Speaking and writing

- Look at the questionnaire. Ask your teacher the questions, then ask two other students. Put ✓ or ✗ in the columns.

Do you smoke?

Yes, I do./Yes, sometimes.

No, I don't./No, never.

Do you like cooking?

No, not at all.

Yes, I like cooking very much.

2 Now answer the questions about you.

| Questions | T | S 1 | S 2 | Me |
|------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| smoke? | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| drink wine? | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| like Chinese food? | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| like cooking? | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| play cards? | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| play tennis? | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| read a lot? | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| listen to music a lot? | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| watch TV a lot? | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

3 Use the information in the questionnaire. Write about you and your teacher, or you and another student.

Example

I don't smoke, but Marc smokes a lot. We both like Chinese food. ...

5 Grammar

Make the positive sentences negative and make the negative sentences positive.

Examples

She's French. *She isn't French.*
I don't like cooking. *I like cooking.*

- She doesn't speak German.
- They want to learn English.
- We're tired and we want to go to bed.
- John likes watching football on TV, but he doesn't like playing it.
- I work at home because I have a word processor.
- Sarah isn't happy because she doesn't have a nice flat.
- I smoke, I drink, and I don't go to bed early.
- He doesn't smoke, he doesn't drink, and he goes to bed early.

PRESENTATION (3)

Articles

1 Read the text about the Forrester family. Put *a*, *the*, or nothing into the gaps.



Mr and Mrs Forrester have (a) _____ son and (b) _____ daughter. (c) _____ son lives at (d) _____ home and (e) _____ daughter is (f) _____ student at (g) _____ university. Mr Forrester is (h) _____ journalist. He works for (i) _____ Times. He writes (j) _____ articles about (k) _____ restaurants. 'I love (l) _____ food!' he says.

T 21a Listen and check.

- Read about articles in the Grammar Summary on page 31.
- Mr Forrester talks about his holidays. Put *a*, *the*, or nothing into the gaps.



'Every spring (a) _____ children go skiing, so my wife and I go to Paris on (b) _____ holiday. We stay in (c) _____ hotel near (d) _____ River Seine. We have (e) _____ breakfast in (f) _____ hotel, but we have (g) _____ lunch in a restaurant. (h) _____ French food is delicious! We walk a lot, but sometimes we go by (i) _____ taxi. After four days we don't want to go (j) _____ home and go back to (k) _____ work.'

T 21b Listen and check.

Practice

1 Listening and speaking

Listen to your teacher say some incorrect sentences about the Forresters. Correct the sentences.

Example

The son lives with friends.

No, he doesn't.
He lives at home
with his parents.

2 Grammar

Put *a*, *the*, or nothing into the gaps.

- Oxford is _____ town in _____ England, on _____ River Thames.
- _____ Queen lives in _____ very big house in London.
- I have _____ breakfast in _____ bed on _____ Sundays.
- Do you go to _____ work by _____ car?
- My sister is _____ student. She comes _____ home at weekends.
- Do you like _____ Chinese food?

3 Choosing the correct sentence

One sentence has a mistake. Choose the correct sentence. Put ✓ and ✗.

- Where do they live?
 - Where they live?
- She goes to home by taxi.
 - She goes home by taxi.
- Mr and Mrs Smith go walking in summer.
 - Mr and Mrs Smith goes walking in summer.
- I don't understand the question.
 - I no understand the question.
- She goes at weekends swimming.
 - She goes swimming at weekends.
- What you do on Sunday mornings?
 - What do you do on Sunday mornings?
- Do you play tennis sometimes?
 - You play tennis sometimes?
- I like very much football.
 - I like football very much.
- He doesn't know the answer.
 - He don't know the answer.

VOCABULARY

Free time activities

- Check the meaning of new words in your dictionary. Match a picture with an activity.

dancing
visiting museums
doing crosswords
walking
skiing
listening to music
watching TV
taking photographs
ice-skating
cooking
playing computer games
sailing
painting
swimming
reading
eating in restaurants
going to the cinema
playing volleyball
windsurfing
sunbathing
playing cards
fishing

- Work in pairs.
Tell your partner what you like doing and what you don't like doing from the list.
Ask questions about the activities.

I don't like watching TV, but I like reading very much.

Oh, really? What do you read?

When do you read?

Think of two things you like doing which are not on the list. Tell your partner.

READING AND LISTENING

- 1 What season is it now? What are the seasons?
What month is it now? What are the months?
When are the different seasons in your country?
- 2 **T 22a** Read and listen to three people from different countries talking about their free time.

✓ **AL WHEELER FROM CANADA**

We have long, cold winters and short, hot summers. In summer I go sailing and I play baseball, but in winter I play ice hockey and go ice-skating. We have a holiday home near a lake, so I go fishing a lot, too. My favourite season is autumn, or fall, as we say in North America. I love the colours of the trees – red, gold, orange, yellow, and brown.



MANUELA DA SILVA FROM PORTUGAL

People think it's always warm and sunny in Portugal, but January and February are often cold, wet, and grey. I don't like winter. I meet friends in restaurants and bars and we chat. Sometimes we go to a Brazilian bar. I love Brazilian music. But then suddenly it's summer and at weekends we drive to the beach, sunbathe, and go windsurfing. I love summer.

TOSHI SUZUKI FROM JAPAN

I work for Pentax cameras, in the export department. I don't have a lot of free time, but I have one special hobby – taking photographs, of course! I like taking photographs of flowers, especially in spring. Sometimes, after work, I relax in a bar near my office with friends. My friend, Shigeru, likes singing pop songs in the bar. This has a special name, Karaoke. I don't sing – I'm too shy! I just watch him.



Comprehension check

- 1 Answer the questions.
 - a Do they all play sports?
 - b What do Al and Manuela do in winter?
 - c Do Manuela and Toshi like going to bars?
 - d Where is Al's holiday home?
 - e When does Toshi like taking photographs of flowers?
 - f What do Manuela and her friends do in summer?
 - g Do you know all their jobs?
 - h Why does Al like autumn?
 - i Who does Toshi watch? Why doesn't Toshi sing?
 - j Which colours are in the texts?
- 2 Find five mistakes in this summary and correct them.

Al comes from Canada. In winter he plays ice hockey and goes skiing. He has a holiday home near the sea.

Manuela comes from Brazil. She likes sunbathing and windsurfing in summer.

Toshi comes from Japan. He has a lot of free time. He likes taking photographs and singing pop songs in bars.

- 3 **T 22b** Listen to the conversations. Is it Al, Manuela, or Toshi? Where are they? How do you know?
- 4 What is your favourite season? Why? What do you do in the different seasons?

Vocabulary

Write *play* or *go*.

- | | | |
|------------------|-------------------|---------------|
| _____ football | _____ walking | _____ sailing |
| _____ swimming | _____ volleyball | _____ tennis |
| _____ golf | _____ ice-skating | _____ dancing |
| _____ ice hockey | _____ windsurfing | _____ skiing |
| _____ fishing | _____ baseball | |

● EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Social English

1 Complete the conversations with the sentences on the right.



- a A _____.
 B Yes?
 A Do you have a light?
 B _____ . I don't smoke.
 A _____ .

I'm sorry.
 Excuse me!
 That's OK.



- b A _____ . The traffic is bad today.
 B _____ . Come and sit down. We're on page 25.

Don't worry.
 I'm sorry I'm late.



- c A _____ . It's very hot in here.
 B _____ . I'm quite cold.
 A OK. _____ .

Really?
 Can I open the window?
 It doesn't matter.



- d A _____ .
 B Can I help you?
 A Can I have a film for my camera?
 B How many exposures?
 A _____ .
 B How many exposures?
 A _____ .
 B How many pictures?
 24? 36?

Pardon?
 Now I understand!
 Excuse me!
 What does 'exposures' mean?

A Ah! _____ . 36, please.

T 23 Listen and check.

2 In pairs, practise the conversations.

GRAMMAR SUMMARY

Present Simple

Positive

| | | |
|------------------------|--------|----------|
| I You We They | start | at 6.30. |
| He She It | starts | |

Negative

| | | | |
|------------------------|---------|-------|----------|
| I You We They | don't | start | at 6.30. |
| He She It | doesn't | | |

Question

| | | | |
|------|------|------------------------|--------|
| When | do | I you we they | start? |
| | does | he she it | |

Yes/No questions

| | | | |
|------|-----------------|------|---------------|
| Do | you they | have | a camera? |
| Does | he she it | like | Chinese food? |

Short answers

No, I don't./No, we don't.
Yes, they do.

Yes, he does.
No, she doesn't.
Yes, it does.

like/love + verb + -ing

When *like* and *love* are followed by a verb, it is usually verb + -ing.

I like **swimming**.
She loves **listening** to music.
They like **sailing** very much.

Articles

a = indefinite article

- 1 She has **a** flat in London.
Can I have **a** ham sandwich?
- 2 She's **a** nurse. (jobs)

the = definite article

- 3 **The** flat (= her flat) is very nice.
The ham sandwich is horrible!
- 4 **The** Times; **the** Thames (newspapers and rivers)

No article

5 Things in general

I have ___ tea and toast for breakfast.
___ Books are expensive.
I like taking ___ photographs.
Do you like ___ Chinese food?

6 Meals, places, transport

I have ___ breakfast/lunch/dinner.
I go/come ___ home.
I go/come to ___ school/university/work/bed.
I'm at ___ work/on ___ holiday.
I go/come by ___ train/car/bus/taxi.

Prepositions

I stay in bed **until** 11.00.
She works **for** the BBC.
We listen **to** music.

on | Friday mornings/evenings
Saturday
at weekends
in | the morning/evening | *at night*
(the) spring
We stay **in** a hotel.

Study the Word List for this unit on page 123.

STOP AND CHECK

Units 1-4

1 Correcting the mistakes

Each sentence has a mistake. Find it and correct it!

Example

Antonia is ~~Italiana~~. *Antonia is Italian.*

- a London is a city very big.
- b My mother works in a hotel is a receptionist.
- c My father watch TV in the evening.
- d He's like watching football.
- e On Sundays we go in a restaurant.
- f Hans is businessman.
- g You family is very nice.
- h I like listen to music.
- i Our school have a lot of students.
- j The childrens go to school near here.
- k We have the dinner at 7.00.
- l Buses in London are reds.
- m My brother no have a job.
- n Do you want a ice-cream?
- o Is near here, my flat.

15

2 Word order

Put the words in the correct order.

Example

Madrid Jorge from comes *Jorge comes from Madrid.*

- a policeman from is John a New York _____?
- b married sister is your? _____?
- c mountains sister skiing goes the in my _____?
- d isn't coffee nice English very _____?
- e your what name teacher's is? _____?
- f surname how spell do your you? _____?
- g often weekends go I at swimming _____?

7

3 Choosing the correct sentence

One sentence is correct. Which one?

Example

- Where she from? ☒
- Where does she from? ☒
- Where is she from? ☒

- 1 a Sally is a nice girl, and I like.
- b Sally is a nice girl, and I like her.
- c Sally is a nice girl, and I like him.
- 2 a Coffee English is horrible.
- b The English coffee is horrible.
- c English coffee is horrible.
- 3 a Peter works with his father.
- b Peter works with he's father.
- c Peter works with him father.
- 4 a Sally and Tim live in Madrid. They're flat is lovely.
- b Sally and Tim live in Madrid. Their flat is lovely.
- c Sally and Tim live in Madrid. There flat is lovely.
- 5 a She lives in a house or a flat?
- b Does she lives in a house or a flat?
- c Does she live in a house or a flat?
- 6 a I don't like going to discos.
- b I don't like go to discos.
- c I no like going to discos.
- 7 a How many languages you speak?
- b How many languages do you speak?
- c How many languages does you speak?
- 8 a My brother work in a bank.
- b My brother he works in a bank.
- c My brother works in a bank.

8

4 Questions

1 Match a line in A with a line in B to make a question.

| A | B |
|-----------|------------------------------------|
| What | do you go to bed? |
| Where | languages do you speak? |
| What time | is a cup of coffee and a sandwich? |
| Who | do you usually sit next to? |
| How much | do you do at weekends? |
| How many | do you go on holiday? |

5

- 2 Here are the answers to some questions. Write the questions. Use the words in brackets.

Example

What do you do? (you / do) I'm a hairdresser.

a _____ ?
(Peter / start work) At 8.00.

b _____ ?
(Sylvie and Jacques / come) From France.

c _____ ?
(your wife's) Jackie.

d _____ ?
(you / have) Three. Two girls and a boy.

e _____ ?
(you / like / gardening) Yes, I do. I grow a lot of vegetables.

5

5 Prepositions

Put a preposition from the box into each gap.

at in about after for with by to on after

James lives in a small flat (a) _____ Cambridge. He lives (b) _____ two other boys who are students (c) _____ Cambridge University. They work hard during the week, but (d) _____ weekends they invite a lot of friends to their house. They cook a meal (e) _____ their friends, and then they go out (f) _____ the pub (g) _____ a drink, or they stay (h) _____ home and listen (i) _____ music.

James has two jobs. (j) _____ Mondays, Tuesdays, and Wednesdays he works (k) _____ a hospital, where he helps to look (l) _____ children who are ill. He goes to the hospital (m) _____ bus. He starts (n) _____ ten o'clock and works until quarter (o) _____ five. On Thursdays and Fridays he works (p) _____ home. He has a word processor (q) _____ his bedroom and he writes stories. (r) _____ the evening, one of the boys cooks a meal. (s) _____ dinner they look in the newspaper to see what's on TV or they talk (t) _____ their day. They usually go to bed at about midnight.

20

6 Vocabulary

Put the words into the correct columns. There are five words for each column.

cheese map actor favourite toast dentist arrive
palace ham village want bring notebook easy
expensive chicken journalist dictionary leave friendly
interpreter magazine orange night club beach engineer
office newspaper funny listen

| Things to read | Professions | Things to eat | Places | Verbs | Adjectives |
|----------------|-------------|---------------|--------|-------|------------|
| | | cheese | | | |

30

7 am/is/do/does (not)

Put a verb from the box into each gap.

am/'m not is/isn't are/aren't does/doesn't do/don't

Example

I 'm not English, I'm French.

- a Vienna _____ in Austria.
b Where _____ you from?
c I _____ on holiday. I'm at work.
d My teacher _____ very funny.
e What time _____ the bank open?
f My sister _____ eat meat because she _____ like it.
g I _____ hungry. How much _____ a cheese sandwich?
h Where _____ you usually go on holiday?
i Daddy, we _____ want to go to bed. We _____ tired.
j Learning English _____ boring!
It's interesting!

10

Total 100

TRANSLATE

Translate the sentences into your language. Translate the *ideas*, not word by word.

- I am a student.
- My sister isn't at home. She's at work.
- I live in a flat.
- My mother works in a bank.
- I don't smoke.
- My father doesn't like rock music.
- What do you do at weekends?
- John's flat is in the centre of town.
- Can I have a cup of coffee, please?

UNIT 5

There is/are – Prepositions – any/some – Directions (1)

Places

PRESENTATION (1)

There is/are – any – Prepositions

- 1 What are the names of the rooms in a house? Think of one or two things that we do in the rooms.

We watch TV in the living room.

- 2 Look at the photograph of a living room.
Find these objects.

| | | | | |
|-----------|-------------|--------------|---------|----------|
| a chair | an armchair | a table | a sofa | a window |
| a picture | a telephone | a television | a lamp | |
| a mirror | a stereo | a fireplace | a plant | |

- 3 Describe the room.

There's a sofa.

There's a television.

There are two lamps and an armchair.

- 4 **T 24** Listen to the questions and answers, and practise saying them.

Is there a stereo?

Yes, there is.

Is there a clock?

No, there isn't.

Are there any books?

Yes, there are.

Are there any magazines?

No, there aren't.

In pairs, ask and answer questions about these objects.

| | | | | |
|----------|-------------|-------------|---------|----------|
| a table | a dog | a desk | lamps | pictures |
| a fire | a stereo | a camera | flowers | plants |
| a mirror | an armchair | a newspaper | photos | books |



- 5 Look at the photograph of the living room. Put a preposition from the box into each gap.

near on next to in front of behind

- The telephone is _____ the table.
- The table is _____ the sofa.
- The chair is _____ the stereo.
- The lamp is _____ the chair.
- The dog is _____ the fire.

Practice

1 Grammar

Complete the sentences about the living room in the photograph.

- There _____ two books _____ the sofa.
- The sofa is _____ the window.
- There _____ a lamp _____ the television.
- The telephone is _____ one of the lamps.
- '_____ there _____ pictures on the wall?'
'Yes, _____.'
- There _____ desk.
- There's a plant _____ the sofa in front of the window.
- Is _____ fire?
- '_____ there _____ people in the living room?'
'No, _____.'

2 Speaking and listening

- 1 Work in pairs.

Your teacher will give you each a picture of a living room. There are ten differences! Don't show your picture!

Talk about the pictures to find the ten differences.

Is there a table?

Yes, there is.

How many people are there?

Two, and there's a cat on the sofa.

- 2 **T 25** Look at the pictures together. Listen to someone describing them. There are five mistakes in each description. Say 'Stop!' when you hear a mistake.

Stop! There aren't three people! There are four people!

PRESENTATION (2)

some and any

- Look at the photograph of the kitchen. What can you see?
- T 26** Listen to the description of the kitchen and fill in the gaps.

It's a modern kitchen, nice and clean with a lot of cupboards. _____'s a washing machine, a fridge, and a cooker, but there isn't a dishwasher. There are some lovely _____ on the walls, but there aren't any photographs. There's a radio _____ the cooker. There are some flowers, but there aren't _____ plants. On the table there are some apples and oranges. Ah! And there are _____ cups and plates next to the sink.



● Grammar questions

- Look at the sentences. When do we say *There isn't a ...* and when do we say *There aren't any ...*?

There isn't a dishwasher.

There aren't any photographs.

- Look at the sentences. What is the difference?

There are two books.

There are some flowers.



- 1 When we use *some*, we are not interested in the exact number.

I have ten fingers. (NOT I have ~~some~~ fingers.)

I have some friends in Berlin.

- 2 We use *any* in questions and negatives.

Are there any photographs?

There aren't any people.

- 3 Notice the pronunciation of *some* and *any*.

/səm/

/eni/

There are some flowers. There aren't any plants.

Practice

1 Speaking

- 1 Look again at the photograph of the kitchen. Make sentences with *There's a ...* and *There are some ...* about the kitchen.

There's a fridge.

There are some flowers.

- 2 Have a class discussion.

What is there in *your* kitchen? How is your kitchen different from the one in the picture?

Why do you think kitchens are different in different parts of the world?

2 Grammar

- 1 Put *some* or *any* into the gaps.

- In our classroom there are _____ books on the floor.
- There aren't _____ flowers.
- Are there _____ German students in your class?
- There aren't _____ Chinese students.
- We have _____ dictionaries in the cupboard.
- There are _____ pens on the table.

- 2 What is there in your classroom?

3 Listening and speaking

- 1 **T27** Listen to a man describing what is in his briefcase. Tick (✓) the things you hear.

_____ a newspaper _____ some pens _____ a bus ticket
 _____ a dictionary _____ a notebook _____ an address book
 _____ a sandwich _____ a letter _____ some stamps
 _____ some keys _____ some photos

- 2 What is there in *your* bag?

4 Choosing the correct sentence

One sentence has a mistake. Choose the correct sentence. Put ✓ and ✗.

- There's a dog in front of the fire.
 - There's in front of the fire a dog.
- There isn't a desk in the room.
 - There isn't an desk in the room.
- Near of my house there's a park.
 - Near my house there's a park.
- We eat in the kitchen.
 - We eat in kitchen.
- We have a fridge, a table, and a cooker.
 - We have a fridge, a table, and any cooker.
- My room isn't big, but I like it very much.
 - My room isn't big, but I like very much.
- There isn't television in the living room.
 - There isn't a television in the living room.
- In the evening my mother go for a walk.
 - In the evening my mother goes for a walk.
- He gets up at 7.00 every day.
 - He's get up at 7.00 every day.

● READING

Pre-reading task

- 1 Look at the photographs. Can you answer these questions?



Where are these buildings?
 What are they?
 Who lives in them?

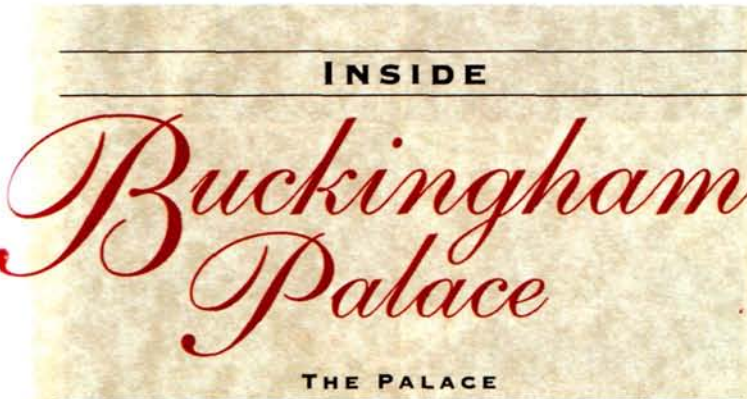


- 2 Check the meaning of new words in your dictionary or with your teacher.

| | | |
|------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------------|
| inside (<i>prep</i>) | to prepare (<i>v</i>) | do the washing-up (<i>v</i>) |
| the whole world | own (<i>adj</i>) | everybody (<i>pron</i>) |
| famous (<i>adj</i>) | piper (<i>n</i>) | during (<i>prep</i>) |
| grow up (<i>v</i>) | outside (<i>prep</i>) | course (food) (<i>n</i>) |
| like (<i>prep</i>) | | |

Reading

Read the text.



There are two addresses in London that the whole world knows. One is 10 Downing Street, where the Prime Minister lives. The other is Buckingham Palace. This famous palace, first built in 1703, is in the very centre of London.

It is two places, not one. It is a family house, where children play and grow up. It is also the place where presidents, kings, and politicians go to meet the Queen.

Buckingham Palace is like a small town, with a police station, two post offices, a hospital, a bar, two sports clubs, a disco, a cinema, and a swimming pool. There are 600 rooms and three miles of red carpet. Two men work full-time to look after the 300 clocks. About 700 people work in the Palace.

Comprehension check

- Are the sentences true (✓) or false (✗)? Correct the false sentences.
 - The Palace is more than two hundred years old.
 - It is famous because it is in the centre of London.
 - The same person starts the Queen's bath, prepares her clothes, and feeds the dogs.
 - The dogs sleep in the Queen's bedroom.
 - The Queen and the Prime Minister go out for a drink on Tuesday nights.
- Answer the questions.
 - 'Buckingham Palace is two places, not one.' How?
 - Why is it like a small town?
 - Are there a lot of clocks?
 - How many dogs does the Queen have?
 - What newspaper does she read?
 - What sort of music does the piper play?
 - Why do people have five glasses on the table?
 - Who does the Queen speak to during a meal?
 - What happens when the Queen finishes her food?

THE QUEEN'S DAY

When the Queen gets up in the morning, seven people look after her. One starts her bath, one prepares her clothes, and one feeds the Royal dogs. She has eight or nine dogs, and they sleep in their own bedroom near the Queen's bedroom. Two people bring her breakfast. She has coffee from Harrods, toast, and eggs. Every day for fifteen minutes, a piper plays Scottish music outside her room and the Queen reads *The Times*.

Every Tuesday evening, she meets the Prime Minister. They talk about world news and have a drink, perhaps a gin and tonic or a whisky.



AN INVITATION TO THE PALACE

When the Queen invites a lot of people for dinner, it takes three days to prepare the table and three days to do the washing-up. Everybody has five glasses: one for red wine, one for white

wine, one for water, one for port, and one for liqueur. During the first and second courses, the Queen speaks to the person on her left and then she speaks to the person on her right for the rest of the meal. When the Queen finishes her food, everybody finishes, and it is time for the next course!



Language work

- 1 Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about Buckingham Palace.

Is there a police station?

Yes, there is.

Is there a post office?

Yes, there are two.

Ask about:

a swimming pool a school a sports club a disco
a supermarket a bar a cinema a hospital

- 2 Here are the answers to some questions about the text. Write the questions.

a 10 Downing Street. d Coffee, toast, and eggs.
b 600. e In their own bedroom.
c 300. f On Tuesday evenings.

VOCABULARY AND PRONUNCIATION

Places, people, food and drink

- 1 Put words from the text *Inside Buckingham Palace* into the correct columns. Mark the stress on words with two syllables or more.

| Places | People | Food and drink |
|--------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| • <i>palace</i> | • <i>Prime Minister</i> | • <i>breakfast</i> |
| <i>house</i> | • <i>family</i> | • <i>coffee</i> |

- 2 Can you add more words to the columns?

LISTENING AND SPEAKING

- 1 **T 28** Listen to five people talking about where they live. Fill in the chart.



| | Anne-Marie | Harry | Dave and Maggie | Thanos |
|---------------------|------------|-------|-----------------|--------|
| House or flat? | | | | |
| Old or new? | | | | |
| Where? | | | | |
| Number of bedrooms? | | | | |
| Garden? | | | | |
| Live(s) with? | | | | |

- 2 Talk about where you live.
Do you live in a house or a flat?
How many rooms are there?
Do you have a garden? A terrace?
What's in your bedroom?

Writing

- 3 Write a paragraph about where you live.

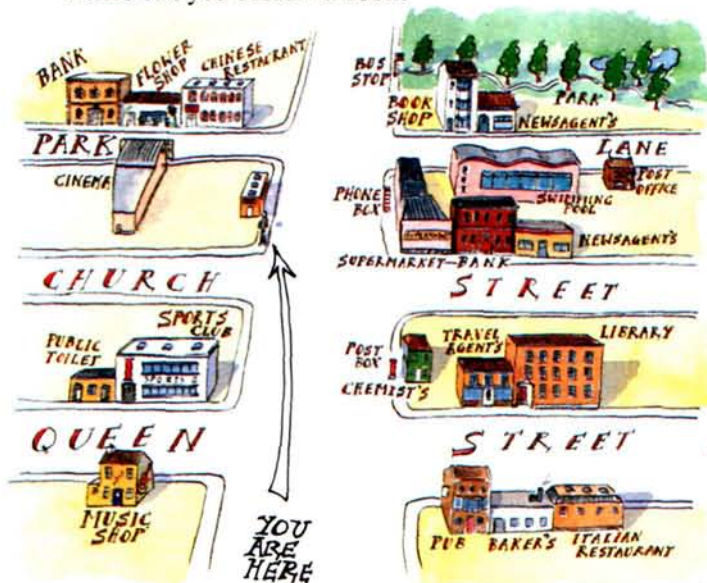
● EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Directions (1)

- 1 Look at the street map. Where can you buy these things?

bread a CD cigarettes a book a plane ticket

Where can you borrow a book?



- 2 **T 29** Listen to the conversations and complete them.

- a A Excuse me! Is _____ a chemist's _____ here?
B Yes. It's over _____.
A Thanks.
- b A _____ me! Is there a _____ club near here?
B Yes. _____ Queen Street. Take the second _____ right.
A Thanks.
- c A Excuse me! Is there a _____ near here?
B There's _____ in Church Street _____ the bank, and there's one in Park Lane opposite the _____.
A Is that one _____?
B No. Just two minutes, that's all.
- d A Is there a cinema near here?
B _____ the first left, and it's _____ left, _____ the flower shop.
A Thanks a lot.

- 3 Work in pairs. Practise the conversations. Then make more conversations about other places on the map.

- 4 Talk about where you are.

Is there a chemist's near here? Is it far?

What about a bank/a post office/a sports club?

GRAMMAR SUMMARY

There is/are

Positive

| | | | |
|-------|-----|------------|------------|
| There | is | a sofa. | (singular) |
| | are | two books. | (plural) |

Negative

| | | | | |
|-------|--------|-----|-----------|------------|
| There | isn't | an | armchair. | (singular) |
| | aren't | any | flowers. | (plural) |

Yes/No questions

| | | |
|-----|-------|-------------|
| Is | there | a table? |
| Are | | any photos? |

Short answers

Yes, there is.
No, there isn't.
Yes, there are.
No, there aren't.

some/any

Positive

There are some flowers. *some + plural noun*

Negative

There aren't any cups. *any + plural noun*

Question

Are there any books? *any + plural noun*

Prepositions

There is a photo **on** the television.

The bank is **next to** the supermarket.

The bus stop is **near** the park.

There is a post box **in front of** the chemist's.

The cinema is **on** the left, **opposite** the flower shop.

There are two pictures **on** the wall.

The lamp is **behind** the sofa.

Your dictionary is **like** my dictionary.

She speaks **to** people **during** the meal.

Why don't we go out **for** a drink?

They talk **about** the news.

She has coffee **from** Harrods.

Study the Word List for this unit on page 124.



UNIT 6

can/could – was/were – At the airport

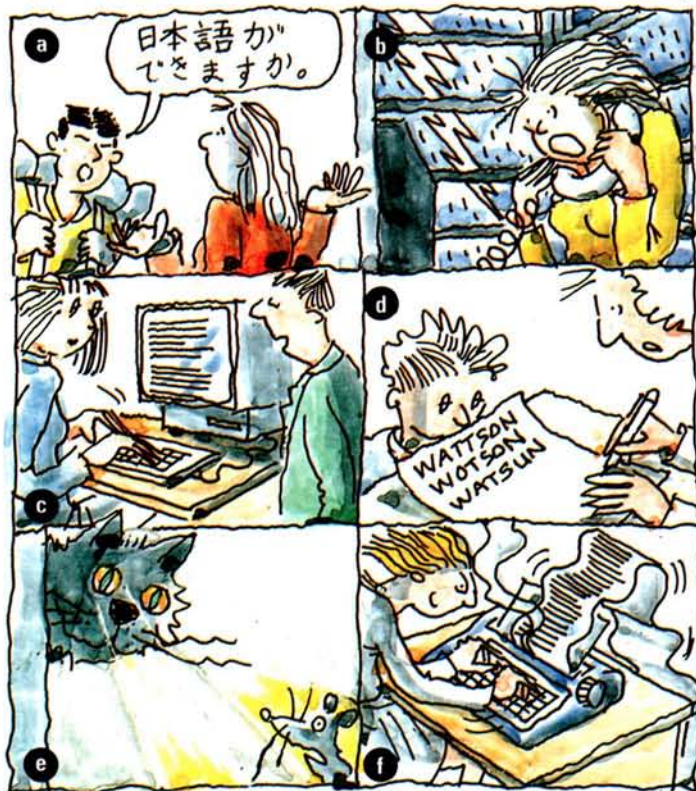
What can you do?

PRESENTATION (1)

can/can't

1 **T 30a** Look at the pictures. Match a sentence with a picture. Then, listen and check.

- 1 Cats can see in the dark.
- 2 She can type fifty words a minute.
- 3 'Can you use a word processor?' 'Yes, I can.'
- 4 'Can you speak Japanese?' 'No, I can't.'
- 5 I can't spell your name.
- 6 I can't hear you. The line's bad.



2 Listen again carefully.

What is the pronunciation of *can*
 – in the positive and in questions?
 – in short answers?
 What is the pronunciation of *can't*?



1 I can speak French. = /kən/ or /kn/
 Can you speak French?

Yes, I can. = /kən/

I can't speak German. = /kɑ:nt/

2 Look at the sentence stress.

• • •
 I can swim.

• • •
 I can't cook.

3 I can't speak Japanese. NOT I ~~don't can~~ speak Japanese.

3 **T 30b** Listen and complete the sentences with *can* or *can't* + verb.

- a I _____, but I _____.
- b He _____ and he _____.
- c '_____ you _____?' 'Yes, I _____.'
- d They _____, but they _____.
- e We _____ and we _____.
- f '_____ she _____?' 'No, she _____.'

Practice

1 Listening and speaking

- 1 **T 31** Listen to Sarah. What can she do? What can't she do? Put ✓ or ✗.



- 2 Work in pairs.

Use the words in Exercise 1. Ask and answer questions.

Can you type?

Yes, I can.

Can you ski?

No, I can't.

Tell the class about your partner.

2 Speaking

- 1 Work in pairs.

Look at the list. Talk about computers.

What can they do? What can't they do?

They can count, but they can't translate.

Yes, they can!

Computers

Can they...?

| | |
|---------------|----------------------|
| count | smell |
| translate | forecast the weather |
| speak English | check spellings |
| play chess | make music |
| do crosswords | have conversations |
| hear | write books |
| see | think |

- 2 What can people do that computers can't do?

PRESENTATION (2)

was/were – could

- 1 Read the questions. Check the meaning of new words. Complete the answers.

| Present | Past |
|---|--|
| a What day is it today? It's _____. | What day was it yesterday? It was _____. |
| b What month is it now? It's _____. | What month was it last month? It was _____. |
| c Where are you now? I'm in/at _____. | Where were you yesterday morning? I was in/at _____. |
| d Are you in England? _____, I am./_____, I'm not. | Were you in England in 1990? _____, I was./_____, I wasn't. |
| e Can you swim? _____, I can./_____, I can't. | Could you swim when you were five? _____, I could./_____, I couldn't. |
| f Can your teacher cook? Yes, _____ can./No, _____ can't. | Could he/she cook when he/she was sixteen? Yes, _____ could./No, _____ couldn't. |

● Grammar questions

- What are the past tense forms of the verb *to be*?

| | Positive | Negative |
|-----------|----------|----------|
| I | was | wasn't |
| you | were | weren't |
| he/she/it | _____ | _____ |
| we | _____ | _____ |
| they | _____ | _____ |

- What is the past tense form of *can* in all persons?

| Positive | Negative |
|----------|----------|
| _____ | _____ |



Notice the pronunciation of *was* and *were*.

/wəz/

/wə/

It was Monday yesterday. We were at school.

In short answers the pronunciation is different.

/wɒz/

'Was it hot?'

'Yes, it was.'

/wɜː/

'Were you tired?'

'Yes, we were.'

2 Speaking

1 Look at the sentences.

My sister *could* read when she was four.

I *couldn't* read until I was seven.

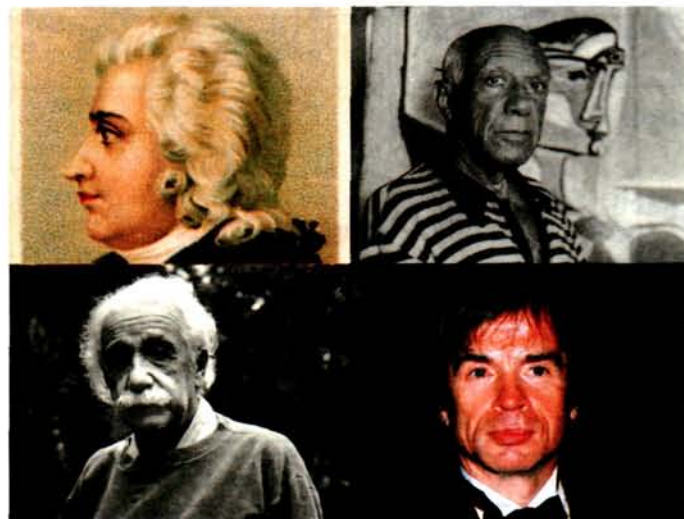
Make similar sentences, using these words.

a Mozart/play the piano/three. I/play the piano/ten.

b Picasso/draw/one. I/draw/six.

c Nureyev/dance/three. I/dance/seven.

d I/speak/two. Einstein/speak/eight. (True!)



Memorize some of the sentences! Practise saying them.

2 Match a line in A with a line in B.

| A | B |
|----------------------|-----------|
| Mozart was born in | Siberia. |
| Picasso was born in | Ulm. |
| Nureyev was born in | Salzburg. |
| Einstein was born in | Malaga. |

Where were you born? When?

I was born in Madrid in 1975.

3 Choosing the correct sentence

One sentence has a mistake. Which is the correct sentence? Put ✓ and ✗.

- a I don't can use a word processor.

b I can't use a word processor.
- a Was they at the party?

b Were they at the party?
- a I'm sorry. I can't go to the party.

b I'm sorry. I no can go to the party.
- a She no was at home.

b She wasn't at home.
- a He could play chess when he was five.

b He can play chess when he was five.
- a I was in New York the last week.

b I was in New York last week.

2 T32 Listen and repeat.

3 Ask and answer questions.

Where were you ...

at eight o'clock this morning? at half past six yesterday evening?

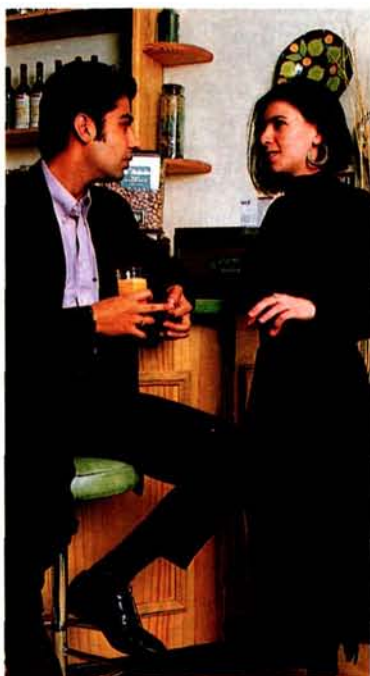
at two o'clock this morning? at this time yesterday?

at ten o'clock last night? last Sunday lunchtime?

Practice

1 Listening and pronunciation

1 Read the conversation between two friends, Sue and Bill. Put *was*, *were*, *wasn't*, or *couldn't* into the gaps.



Sue _____ you at Eve's party last Saturday?

Bill Yes, I _____.

Sue _____ it good?

Bill Well, it _____ OK.

Sue _____ there many people?

Bill Yes, there _____.

Sue _____ Tom there?

Bill No, he _____. And where _____ you?

Sue Oh ... I _____ go because I _____ at Adam's party! It _____ brilliant!

T33 Listen and check. Listen again for the pronunciation of *was* and *were*.

2 Work in pairs. Practise the conversation. Then make similar conversations about:

John's barbecue last Sunday
the disco last Friday evening
the football match last week

READING AND SPEAKING

Pre-reading task

What do teenagers like doing in your country?
Think of three things and tell the others in the class.

Reading

Divide into two groups.

Group A Read about Ivan Mirsky.

Group B Read about Jaya Rajah.

Answer the questions.

Ivan Mirsky is thirteen and he is the number 13 chess player in the world.

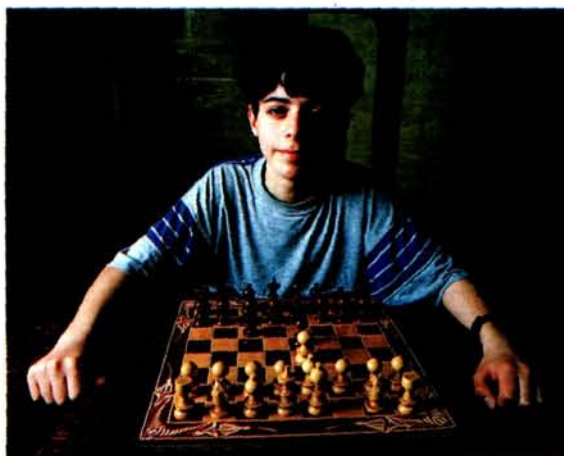
He was born in Russia but now lives in America with his father, Vadim. They live in a one-room flat in Brooklyn. Ivan doesn't go to school and his father doesn't have a job. They practise chess problems all day, every day, morning, afternoon, and evening. Ivan was different from a very young age: he could ride a bike when he was eighteen months old and read before he was two. He could play cards at three and the piano at four. When he was twelve, he was the under-20 chess champion of Russia.

His father can't speak English and can't play chess, either! Ivan translates for him. Vadim says, 'I know that I can't play chess, but I can still help Ivan. He and I don't have any friends—we don't want any friends. Other teenagers are boring! We don't like playing sports or watching TV. We live for chess!'

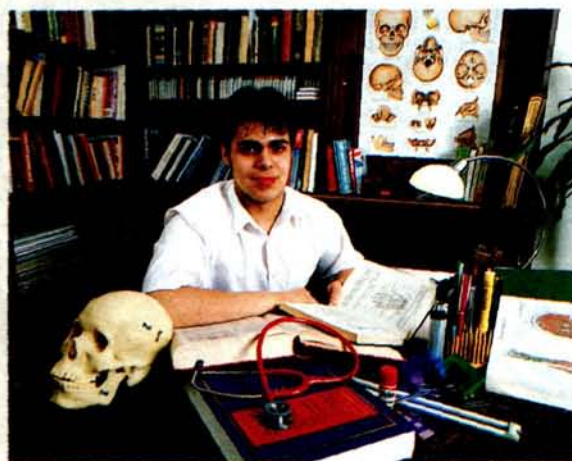
Comprehension check

- a How old is he?
- b Does he go to school?
- c Where was he born?
- d Where does he live now?
- e Who does he live with?
- f What does his father do?
- g How was he different when he was very young?
- h What does he do in the evening?
- i Can his father speak English?
- j Does he have any friends?
- k What does he do in his free time?

Check your answers with your group.



TWO TEENAGE GENIUSES



Jaya Rajah is fourteen, but he doesn't go to school. He studies medicine at New York University in a class of twenty-year-olds. Jaya was born in Madras in India but now lives in a house in New York with his mother, father, and brother. They can all speak English fluently. His father is a doctor.

Jaya was different from a very young age. He could count before he could say 'Mummy' or 'Daddy'. He could answer questions on calculus when he was five and do algebra when he was eight. Now he studies from 8.15 to 4.00 every day at the university. Then he studies at home with his father from 6.30 to 10.00 every evening. Jaya doesn't have any friends. He never goes out in the evenings, but he sometimes watches TV. He says, 'I live for one thing—I want to be a doctor before I am seventeen. Other children of my age are boring. They can't understand me.'

Speaking

- Find a partner from the other group.
Discuss the answers again and tell your partner about the teenager in your text.
- Now read the other text.
How many similarities and differences can you find?

They both live in New York.

Ivan lives with just his father, but Jaya lives with his parents and his brother.

- What do you think?
 - Are Ivan and Jaya happy?
 - Are friends important? Why?

Roleplay

Work in pairs.

Student A is a journalist, Student B is Ivan or Jaya.
Ask and answer questions. Use the questions in the Comprehension Check to help you prepare the interview.

Hello, Ivan! Can I ask you one or two questions?

Yes, of course.

First of all, how old are you?

I'm thirteen.

VOCABULARY AND PRONUNCIATION

Words that sound the same

- Look at the sentences. What do you notice about the underlined words?
I have a black eye.
No, he doesn't know the answer.
- Find the words in B that have the same pronunciation as the words in A.
Check the meaning of new words in your dictionary.

| A | | | B | | |
|------|--------|-------|-------|------|-------|
| hear | see | write | right | no | check |
| eye | there | for | where | buy | I |
| know | by | knows | nose | two | sea |
| wear | son | hour | four | meet | their |
| meat | cheque | too | our | here | sun |

- Each sentence has two words with the wrong spelling. Correct the spelling mistakes.

- I can here you, but I can't sea you.
- Their are three bedrooms in hour house.
- John nose wear Jill lives.
- My sun lives near the see.
- Don't where that hat when you meat the Queen!
- They no Anna two.
- You were write. Sally and Peter don't eat meet.
- There daughter could right when she was three.
- I want to by too new pens.
- Cheque that your answers are write.

- Here are some spellings in phonetics. Write the two words which sound the same.

- | | | |
|----------|-------|-------|
| a /nəʊz/ | _____ | _____ |
| b /sʌn/ | _____ | _____ |
| c /mi:t/ | _____ | _____ |
| d /tʃek/ | _____ | _____ |
| e /tu:/ | _____ | _____ |
| f /raɪt/ | _____ | _____ |
| g /hɪə/ | _____ | _____ |
| h /weə/ | _____ | _____ |



● EVERYDAY ENGLISH

At the airport

- 1 **T 34a** Listen to the airport announcements and complete the chart.

| FLIGHT NUMBER | DESTINATION | GATE NUMBER | REMARK |
|---------------|-------------|-------------|-----------------|
| BA 516 | GENEVA | 14 | LAST CALL |
| SK | | | LAST CALL |
| AF | | | DELAYED 30 mins |
| LH | | | NOW BOARDING |
| VS | | | NOW BOARDING |

- 2 Where do you go first when you travel by plane? Put these places in the correct order. Write 1-5 on the left.

_____ passport control _____
 _____ baggage reclaim _____
1 the check-in desk _____
 _____ the plane _____
 _____ the arrival hall _____
 _____ the departure lounge **a**



- 3 **T 34b** Read and listen to the conversations. Where are they? Write the letter next to the correct place on the right in Exercise 2.
- a A Ah! ... BA 476 to Madrid. That's our flight.
 B Was it gate 4 or 14?
 A I couldn't hear. I think it was 4.
 B Ssssh! There it is again. It *is* gate 4.
 A OK. Come on!
- b A Can I see your passport, please?
 B Yes, of course. Here you are.
 A Thank you very much. That's fine.
- c A Can I have your ticket, please?
 B Yes, of course. Here you are.
 A Do you have just one suitcase?
 B Yes. This bag is hand luggage.
 A That's fine. Smoking or non-smoking?
 B Non-smoking, please. Oh ... and can I have a seat next to the window?
 A Yes, that's OK. Here's your boarding pass. Have a nice flight!
- d A Can I have your tray please, madam?
 B Yes. Here you are.
 A Thank you. And can you fasten your seat belt?
 We land in ten minutes.
 B Yes, of course.
- e A Excuse me. I think that's my suitcase.
 B I'm sorry. My suitcase is red, too.
 A Is this yours?
 B Yes, it is. Thank you very much.
- f A Hello. Are you Marie-Thérèse Scherer from Switzerland?
 B Yes, I am. Are you Mr and Mrs Barnes?
 A Yes, we are. Welcome to England, Marie-Thérèse. Was your flight good?
 B Yes, it was, but I don't like flying.
 C Never mind. You're here safely now. Come on, the car's outside.
- 4 Read the conversations again carefully. Who are the people?
- 5 **T 34c** Close your books.
 Listen to some of the lines from the conversations. There is a pause after each one for you to respond. You can use the ideas from the conversations in the book or your own ideas.
- 6 Work in groups of two or three.
 Think of some roleplays in an airport or on a plane. Choose a place and some characters.
 You can be travellers from different countries, pilots, customs officers ...!

GRAMMAR SUMMARY

can/can't

Can and can't have the same form in all persons. There is no *do* or *does*.

Can is followed by the infinitive (without *to*).

could/couldn't

Could is the past of *can*. *Could* and *couldn't* have the same form in all persons.

Could is followed by the infinitive (without *to*).

Positive

| | | |
|-----------|--------------|-------|
| I | can could | swim. |
| You | | |
| He/She/It | | |
| We | | |
| They | | |

Negative

| | | |
|-----------|-------------------|--------|
| I | can't couldn't | dance. |
| You | | |
| He/She/It | | |
| We | | |
| They | | |

NOT He ~~doesn't~~ can dance.

Question

| | | | |
|------|--------------|--------------------------------|-----|
| What | can could | I | do? |
| | | you he/she/it we they | |

Yes/No questions

| | | |
|-------|----------------------------|-----------------|
| Can | you she they etc. | drive? cook? |
| Could | | |

NOT Do you can drive?

Short answers

No, I can't./No, we couldn't.
Yes, she can/could.
Yes, they can/could.

was/were

Was/were is the past of *am/is/are*.

Positive

| | | |
|-----------|------|-----------------------|
| I | was | in Paris yesterday. |
| She/He/It | | |
| We | were | in England last year. |
| You | | |
| They | | |

Negative

| | | |
|-----------|---------|--------------------------|
| I | wasn't | at school yesterday. |
| He/She/It | | |
| We | weren't | at the party last night. |
| You | | |
| They | | |

Question

| | | |
|-------|------|----------------------|
| Where | was | I? he/she/it? |
| | were | we? you? they? |

Yes/No questions

| | | |
|------|---------------------|----------|
| Was | he she | at work? |
| Were | you they etc. | at home? |

Short answers

No, he wasn't.
Yes, she was.
Yes, I was./Yes, we were.
No, they weren't.

was born

| | | | |
|-------|------|---------------------|-------|
| Where | was | she he | born? |
| | were | you they etc. | |

I was born in Manchester in 1970. NOT I ~~am born~~ in 1970.

Prepositions

They were **in** England **in** 1980.

I was **at** a party.

We land **in** ten minutes.

He studies **from** 8.15 to 4.00.

Study the Word List for this unit on page 124.

UNIT 7

Past Simple (1) – Special occasions

Then and now

PRESENTATION (1)

Regular verbs

- 1 Check the meaning of these verbs.

earn move (house) retire die

- 2 Look at the photograph and read text A about Ellen Peel.



A
Ellen Peel is over ninety years old. She lives in a village in the country with her five cats. She is not married, but she loves children. She is very happy, but she can remember times when her life was difficult. She often thinks about her past.

- 3 **T 35a** Read and listen to text B.

B
Ellen's father died in the war in 1915 and her mother died a year later. Ellen was twelve years old. Immediately she started work as a housemaid with a rich family in London.



Now answer the Grammar questions.

● Grammar questions

- Which text is about the present? Which is about the past?
 - Find an example of the past of *is*. What are the last two letters of the other verbs in text B?
 - Complete the rule.
To form the Past Simple of regular verbs, add _____ to the infinitive.
- 4 **T 35b** Read and listen to text C.
Fill in the gaps. Use the Past Simple form of the verbs in the box.

love stay retire look work move earn clean like

C
She _____ from 5.30 in the morning until 9.00 at night. She _____ all the rooms in the house before breakfast. She _____ £25 a year.
In 1921 she _____ to another family. She _____ her new job because she _____ after the children. There were five children, four sons and one daughter.
She _____ them, especially the baby, Robert. She _____ with that family for twenty years. Ellen never married. She just looked after other people's children until she _____ when she was seventy years old.



Practice

1 Grammar

Match a line in A with a line in B. Put the verb in B into the Past Simple.

| A | B |
|--|--|
| a I was only twelve years old | because I _____ (work) very long hours. |
| b I was always tired in my first job | but in 1920 I _____ (live) in London. |
| c I started work at 5.30 in the morning | when my mother _____ (die) and I _____ (start) work. |
| d Now I live in a village, | but I _____ (love) Robert especially. |
| e Now I look after my five cats. | and I _____ (finish) at 9.00 in the evening. |
| f I loved all the children, | In the 1920s I _____ (look) after five children. |
| g Robert's over seventy now and I still see him. | He _____ (visit) me just last month. |

2 Listening and pronunciation

- T 36a** Listen to Ellen and check your answers.
- T 36b** The past tense ending *-ed* has three different pronunciations. Listen and put the verbs in the correct columns.

| /t/ | /d/ | /ɪd/ |
|-------|-------|-------|
| _____ | _____ | _____ |
| _____ | _____ | _____ |
| _____ | _____ | _____ |
| _____ | _____ | _____ |

Practise saying the verbs.

PRESENTATION (2)

Questions and negatives

- Read about Queen Victoria. Ask your teacher the questions below the text to find the missing information.



Queen Victoria was born in _____ (?) in 1819 and she died in _____ (?). She was Queen of the United Kingdom for nearly sixty-four years.

Her father died when she was _____ (?) and she was Queen from 1837 to 1901. She didn't have any brothers or sisters. She married Prince Albert in _____ (?) and they lived in _____ (?) with their _____ (?) children.

- When did she die?
- When did she marry Prince Albert?
- How many children did they have?
- Where was she born?
- Where did they live?
- When did her father die?

- T 37** Listen and practise saying the questions.



- Did* is the past of *do* and *does*. We use *did* to form a question about the past.
Where **do** you work (now)? Where **does** she live (now)?
Where **did** you work in 1980? Where **did** she live in 1950?
- We use *didn't* to form a negative.
She **didn't** have any brothers or sisters.

● Grammar question

Complete the rule.

To form questions in the Past Simple, we use the auxiliary verb _____ and the _____ (without *to*).

Practice

1 Speaking

Work in pairs. Your teacher will give you some more information about Queen Victoria and Prince Albert, but you don't have the same information as your partner. Ask and answer questions to complete the information.

Example

| | |
|--|---|
| Student A Prince Albert was German and they married in (Where?) in 1840. | Student B Prince Albert was (What nationality?) and they married in London in 1840. |
|--|---|

| | |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Student A | Student B |
| Where did they marry? | In London. |
| He was German. | What nationality was Prince Albert? |

2 Grammar and speaking

- Put *did*, *was*, or *were* into the gaps.
 - Where _____ you born? Where _____ your mother born?
 - When _____ you start school?
 - How many schools _____ you go to?
 - What _____ your favourite subject?
 - Where _____ you live when you _____ a child?
 - _____ you live in a house or a flat?
- Stand up!
Ask two or three students the questions in Exercise 1.
- Tell the class some of the information you learned.

| | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------|----------------|
| Enrico was born in ... | He started school ... | His mother ... |
|------------------------|-----------------------|----------------|

PRESENTATION (3)

Irregular verbs

- Three of the verbs in the box are regular. Which are they? The others are irregular. Check the meanings in your dictionary and write in the Past Simple forms of all the verbs. There is a list of irregular verbs on page 127.

| | | | | | | | |
|--------|-------|-------|-------|--------|-------|------|-------|
| have | _____ | come | _____ | work | _____ | go | _____ |
| leave | _____ | hate | _____ | get | _____ | give | _____ |
| become | _____ | write | _____ | change | _____ | win | _____ |
| lose | _____ | find | _____ | buy | _____ | sell | _____ |

- T 38** Listen and repeat the Past Simple verb forms.
- How old were you in 1980? What can you remember about the 1980s?
Think about your life, sport, and politics.
- T 39** Listen to Kevin talking about the 1980s.

ABOUT HIM

- He _____ school in 1982. He was unemployed, but then he _____ a job in an office. He _____ computer software.
- His parents _____ a video recorder in 1985 and his brother _____ a video computer game for his birthday in 1986.
- Kevin _____ his job in 1990.

SPORT

- The USSR _____ to the Olympics in 1984, but both the United States and the USSR _____ to Seoul in 1988.
- Argentina _____ the World Cup in 1986.

POLITICS

- Reagan _____ the US president in 1981, Gorbachev _____ the world *glasnost* and *perestroika*, and the Berlin Wall _____ down in 1989.



Complete the sentences. Listen again and check.

- Here are the answers to some questions about the listening text. Write the questions.

Example

In 1982.

When did Kevin leave school?

- | | |
|--------------------------|------------|
| a Computer software. | d In 1990. |
| b In 1985. | e In 1986. |
| c A video computer game. | f In 1989. |

Practice

1 Speaking

- 1 Look at the past time expressions.

| | | | |
|------|--------|-----------|-----------|
| last | night | yesterday | morning |
| | Monday | | afternoon |
| | week | | evening |
| | month | | |
| | year | | |

We cannot say ~~last evening~~ or ~~last afternoon~~.

- 2 Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions with *When did you last ...?* Ask one more question each time.

Example
have a holiday

When did you last
have a holiday?

Last August.

Where did you go?

To Spain.

- a see a video
- b go shopping
- c give someone a kiss
- d take a photograph
- e go to a party
- f lose something
- g write a letter
- h get a present
- i have dinner in a restaurant

Tell the class some things you learned about your partner.

Keiko had a holiday last August and
she went to Spain.

2 Choosing the correct sentence

One sentence has a mistake. Choose the correct sentence.
Put ✓ and ✗.

- 1 a He bought some new shoes.
b He buyed some new shoes.
- 2 a Where did you go yesterday?
b Where you went yesterday?
- 3 a You see Jane last week?
b Did you see Jane last week?
- 4 a Did she found a job?
b Did she find a job?
- 5 a We didn't enjoyed the film.
b We didn't enjoy the film.
- 6 a I didn't go out yesterday evening.
b I didn't go out last evening.
- 7 a I was to school for the first time when I was six.
b I went to school for the first time when I was six.
- 8 a Last night I have dinner with friends.
b Last night I had dinner with friends.

READING

Pre-reading task

- 1 Do you know any British or American writers? What do you know about them?
- 2 Do you know any books by Charles Dickens? When did he live? Do you know anything about Victorian England?
- 3 Check the meaning of these words in your dictionary. Put one of the words into each gap.

| | | | |
|--------------|---------------|------------------|------------|
| novelist (n) | clerk (n) | debt (n) | prison (n) |
| factory (n) | popular (adj) | experience (n) | |
| lawcourt (n) | abroad (adv) | successful (adj) | |

- a All the students like Anna. She's a very _____ girl.
- b My mother writes books, but she isn't a
famous _____.
- c Alan started work in a bank last week. He's
a _____.
- d He has ten clothes shops. He's a rich, _____
businessman.
- e I don't like borrowing money. I hate being in _____.
- f I live near a very big _____ that makes cars.
- g I went round the world for a year. It was a
wonderful _____.
- h She often goes _____ in her job, sometimes to Hong
Kong, sometimes to Canada.

Reading

Read the text about the life of Charles Dickens.

Comprehension check

- 1 Are the sentences true (✓) or false (✗)? Correct the false sentences.
 - a Charles Dickens wrote novels.
 - b He wrote only about the lives of rich and famous people.
 - c His father had a good job.
 - d Charles never went to school.
 - e He went to prison when he was eleven.
 - f His first job was in a factory.
 - g He became a journalist when he was fifteen.
 - h He never married.

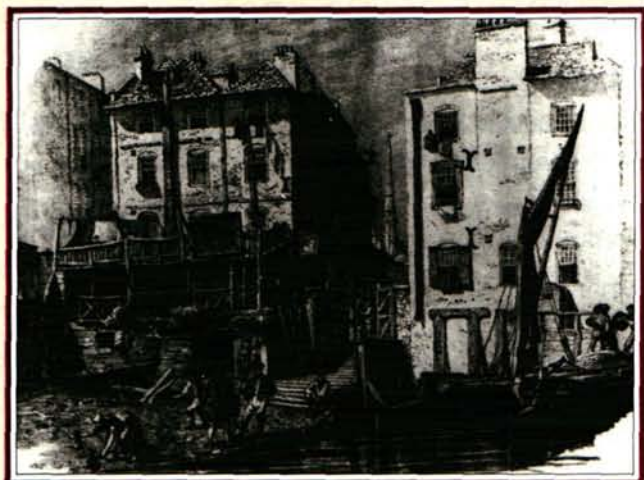
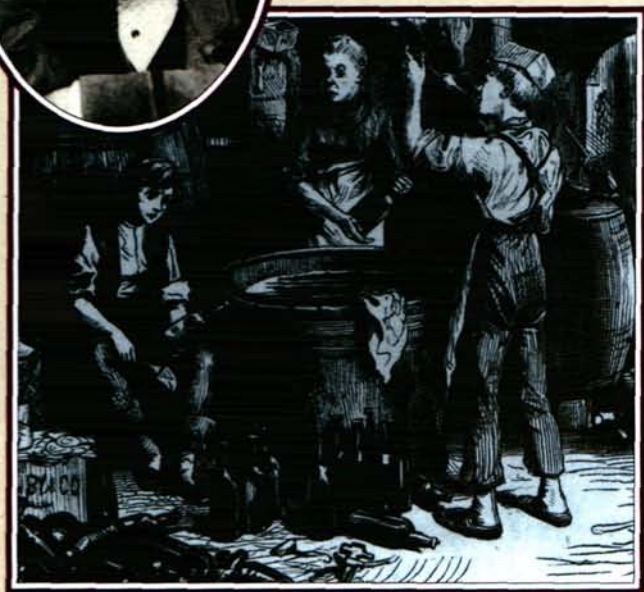
Charles Dickens (1812–1870)

Charles Dickens is one of the greatest novelists in the English language. He wrote about the real world of Victorian England and many of his characters were not rich, middle-class ladies and gentlemen, but poor and hungry people.

DICKENS THE CHILD

His family lived in London. His father was a clerk in an office. It was a good job, but he always spent more money than he earned and he was often in debt. There were eight children in the family, so life was hard.

Charles went to school and his teachers thought he was very clever. But suddenly, when he was only eleven, his father went to prison for his debts and the family went, too. Only Charles didn't go to prison. He went to work in a factory, where he washed bottles. He



worked ten hours a day and earned six shillings (30p) a week. Every night, after work, he walked four miles back to his room. Charles hated it and never forgot the experience. He used it in many novels, especially *David Copperfield* and *Oliver Twist*.

DICKENS THE WRITER

When he was sixteen, he started work for a newspaper. He visited law courts and the Houses of Parliament. Soon he was one of the *Morning Chronicle's* best journalists. He also wrote short stories for magazines. These were funny descriptions of people that he met. Dickens' characters were full of colour and life—good people were very, very good and bad people were horrible. His books became popular in many countries and he spent a lot of time abroad, in America, Italy, and Switzerland.



DICKENS THE MAN

Dickens had ten children, but he didn't have a happy family life. He was successful in his work but not at home, and his wife left him. He never stopped writing and travelling, and he died very suddenly in 1870.

2 Answer the questions.

- How old was Dickens when he died?
- How many brothers and sisters did he have?
- Was he good at school?
- Why did he leave school when he was eleven?
- Who was in prison?
- What did Charles do in his first job?
- What was his next job?
- Was he happy at home?
- When did he stop writing?

Writing

Write about your past. Use these ideas to help you.

| Born when? where? | Parents work? live? | School like? not like? | Free time sports? hobbies? | First job what? when? earn? |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| | | | | |

Silent letters

- 1 English spelling is not phonetic, so there are many silent letters in English words.

Here are some words from the text about Charles Dickens. Practise saying them.

debt /det/ eight /eɪt/
hard /hɑ:d/ thought /θɔ:t/

Cross out the silent letters in these words.

Example
~~n~~ight

a walk d writer g work j half
b listen e autumn h short k foreign
c know f farm i high l daughter

T 40a Listen and check. Practise saying the words.

- 2 Here are some of the words from Exercise 1 in phonetics. Write the words.

Example
/wɔ:k/ = walk

a /wɜ:k/ _____ d /ɔ:təm/ _____
b /fɑ:m/ _____ e /raɪtə/ _____
c /lɪsən/ _____ f /dɔ:tə/ _____

- 3 Here are some other words in phonetics. Write the words. Be careful! They all have silent letters.

a /tɔ:k/ _____ f /waɪt/ _____
b /bɔ:n/ _____ g /naɪf/ _____
c /bɔ:t/ _____ h /rɒŋ/ _____
d /wɜ:ld/ _____ i /kʌbəd/ _____
e /ɑ:nsə/ _____ j /krɪsməs/ _____

T 40b Listen and practise saying the words.

Special occasions

- 1 Look at the list of days. Which are special? Check the meaning of new words in your dictionary. Match the special days with the photographs and objects.

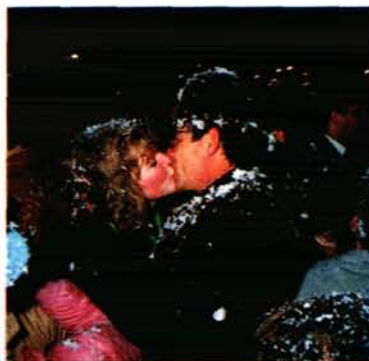
Thursday
birthday
Monday
wedding day
Christmas Day
yesterday
New Year's Eve
Easter Day
tomorrow
Mother's Day
today
Valentine's Day
Friday



Look at the photographs again. Do you have the same customs in your country?

- 2 Complete the conversations.

- a A Ugh! Work again! I hate ____!
B Me, too. Did you have a nice weekend?
A Yes. It was wonderful.
- b Happy ____ to you.
Happy ____ to you.
Happy ____, dear Katie.
Happy ____ to you.
- c A How many ____ eggs did you get?
B Six. What about you?
A Five. I had them all on ____ morning before lunch.
B Did you?
A And then I was sick!
B Ugh!



GRAMMAR SUMMARY

Past Simple

The form of the Past Simple is the same in all persons.

Positive

| | | |
|-----------|-------|--------------------|
| I | went | to London in 1985. |
| You | | |
| He/She/It | | |
| We | moved | |
| They | | |

Negative

We use *didn't* + infinitive (without *to*) in all persons.

| | | | |
|-----------|--------|------|------------|
| I | | go | to London. |
| You | didn't | | |
| He/She/It | | move | |
| We | | | |
| They | | | |

Question

We use *did* + infinitive (without *to*) in all persons.

| | | | |
|-------|-----|-----------|-----|
| When | did | I | go? |
| Where | | you | |
| | | he/she/it | |
| | | we | |
| | | they | |

Yes/No questions

Short answers

| | | | |
|-----|------|------|-------------|
| Did | you | like | the film? |
| | she | | the family? |
| | they | | |
| | etc. | | |

No, I didn't./No, we didn't.
Yes, she did.
No, they didn't.

Remember the list of irregular verbs on page 127.

Time expressions

| | | | |
|------|----------|-----------|-----------|
| last | night | yesterday | morning |
| | Saturday | | afternoon |
| | week | | evening |
| | month | | |
| | year | | |

Prepositions

I often think **about** you.

I have a shower **before** breakfast.

I am always **in** debt.

Write **about** when you were young.

The box is full **of** books.

Study the Word List for this unit on page 124.

- d A Congratulations!
B Oh ... thank you very much.
A When's the happy day?
B Pardon?
A Your _____ day. When is it?
B Oh! We're not sure yet. Some time in June, probably.
- e A Hello! Merry _____, everyone!
B Merry _____! Come in, come in. It's so cold outside.
- f A Wonderful! It's _____!
B Yes. Have a nice weekend!
A Same to you.

T 41a Listen and check. In pairs, practise the conversations.

3 **T 41b** Listen and answer.

UNIT 8

Past Simple (2) – Time expressions – Ordinals and dates

How things began

PRESENTATION (1)

Negatives and ago

- 1 What century is it now? What was the last century?
What year is it now? What year was it one hundred years ago?
- 2 Look at the photographs. Complete the questions with the correct verb from the box.

| | | | | | |
|-------|--------------|-----------|-------|-------|------|
| drive | eat | listen to | make | write | ride |
| take | travel (× 2) | use | watch | wear | |

- 3 Ask and answer questions.

Did people drive cars one hundred years ago?

Yes, I think they did.

I'm not sure.

No, they didn't.

- 4 Say the things people did and the things people didn't do.

People rode bikes.

They didn't watch TV.













- 5 Listen! Your teacher knows the answers and the correct dates.

● Grammar question

Complete the rule.

To form the negative in the Past Simple, we use the auxiliary verb _____ + _____ and the _____ (without *to*).

ONE HUNDRED YEARS AGO DID PEOPLE...

| | | | |
|--|---|--|---|
| _____ cars? | _____ bikes? | _____ TV? | _____ photographs? |
|  |  |  |  |
| _____ by train? | _____ by plane? | _____ telephone calls? | _____ typewriters? |
|  |  |  |  |
| _____ records? | _____ jeans? | _____ with ball-point pens? | _____ hamburgers? |
|  |  |  |  |

Practice

1 Reading and listening

- 1 Read the three texts. Check the meaning of new words in your dictionary.
There are three mistakes in each text. Can you find any of them?

- 2 **T 42** Listen and correct the mistakes.

He didn't make the first hamburgers in 1985.
He made them in 1895.



THE HAMBURGER

An American chef from Connecticut, Louis Lassen, made and sold the first hamburgers in 1985. He called them hamburgers because sailors from Hamburg in Germany gave him the recipe. Teachers from Yale University and businessmen loved them and bought them. Kenneth Lassen, Louis' son, still sells hamburgers in Connecticut.



TELEVISION

A Scotsman, John Logie Baird, transmitted the first television picture on 25 October, 1825. The first thing on television was a cat from the office next to Baird's workroom in London. In 1927 Baird sent pictures from London to Glasgow. In 1928 he sent pictures to Paris and also produced the first colour TV pictures.

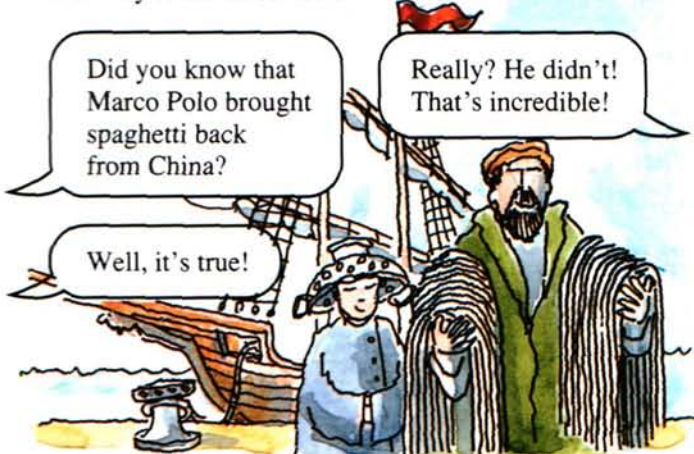


THE BALL-POINT PEN

A Hungarian, Laszlo Biro, made the first ball-point pen in 1838. In 1944 the American Army bought thirty thousand because soldiers could write with them outside in the rain. At the end of the war 'Biros' quickly became very popular all over the world. In 1948 a shop in New York sold ten on one day.

2 Listening and pronunciation

- 1 **T 43** Read and listen to the conversations. Listen carefully to the intonation.



- 2 Work in pairs.
Your teacher will give you two different lists of more incredible information!
- Student A Give the information, beginning *Did you know that ...?*
- Student B Make a reply.
- Then change!

PRESENTATION (2)

Time expressions

How many correct time expressions can you make?

the twentieth century
1924
winter
September
10 October
weekends
Christmas day
Saturday
Sunday evening
the evening
seven o'clock

Practice

1 Grammar and speaking

Ask and answer questions with *when*. Use a time expression and *ago* in the answer.

When did you get up?

At seven o'clock.
Three hours ago.

When did this term start?

In September. Two months ago.

- a ... have breakfast?
- b ... arrive at school?
- c ... start learning English?
- d ... start this school?
- e ... first travel by plane?
- f ... last have a holiday?
- g ... last eat a hamburger?
- h ... learn to ride a bicycle?
- i ... your parents marry?
- j ... Shakespeare die?

2 Listening and speaking

1 What is the Past Simple of these verbs?

break into steal eat drink feel fall wake up

2 **T 44** Look at the pictures about a burglar and listen. It's a true story!

Complete the sentences with verbs from the box and your own ideas.

Don't write! Practise saying the story until you can remember it.



Picture 1

On 1 June 1992, a French burglar ... a house ... He ... living room and ...

Picture 2

Then ... kitchen. He opened ... cheese.

Picture 3

... hungry, so ... Next ... champagne.

Picture 4

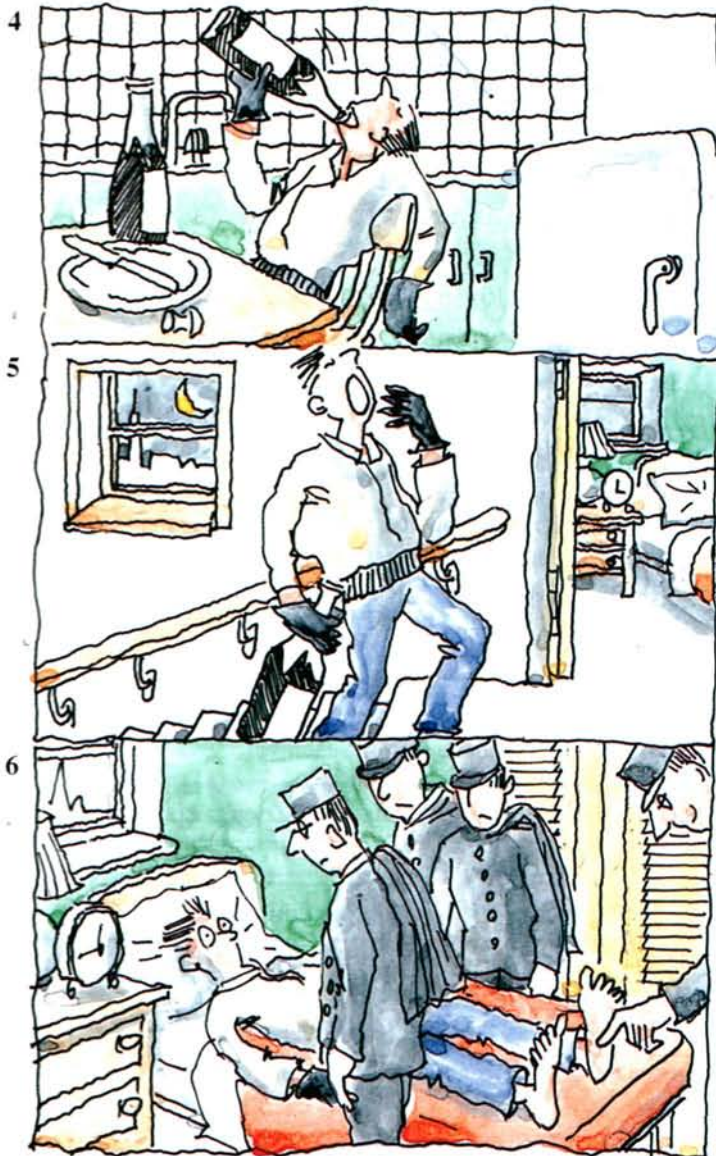
... thirsty, so ... Then ... felt ...

Picture 5

... upstairs for ..., but ... tired ... fell ...

Picture 6

When ... the next ..., there were ... bed!



3 Complete the questions about the story.

Example

When did he break into the house?

On 1 June, 1992.

- How many pictures _____?
Two.
- What _____ see _____?
Some cheese.
- How _____ bottles _____?
Two.
- Why _____ upstairs?
Because he wanted a rest.
- When _____ up?
Next morning.
- How many _____?
Four.

4 Write the story for homework!

VOCABULARY AND PRONUNCIATION

Odd one out

1 Which word is the odd one out? Why?

Example

orange apple ~~chicken~~ banana

Chicken is the odd one out because it's an animal.
The others are kinds of fruit.

Check the meaning of new words in your dictionary.

- | | | | |
|----------------|-------------|-------------|-----------------|
| a camera | stereo | photograph | computer |
| b recipe | cake | bread | biscuit |
| c met | laughed | wrote | spoke |
| d fall in love | get married | get engaged | be retired |
| e pink | yellow | warm | blue |
| f war | sailor | soldier | pilot |
| g hair | voice | eyes | hand |
| h century | clock | season | month |
| i shy | nervous | angry | hungry |
| j fridge | dishwasher | television | washing machine |

2 Where is the stress on these words? Put them in the correct column.

photograph machine recipe camera engaged
dishwasher century computer married

| | | | |
|-------|-----|-------|-----|
| • • • | • • | • • • | • • |
| | | | |

3 Here are some words in phonetics. Practise saying the words.

- a /bred/ c /lɑ:ft/ e /heə/ g /æŋgrɪ/
b /bɪskɪt/ d /wɔ:/ f /mæɪd/ h /hʌŋgrɪ/

4 Put one of the words from Exercise 1 into each gap.

- My American cousin was a _____ in the Vietnam war.
- My daughter doesn't like parties because she's very _____.
- He took a lovely _____ of the baby.
- They _____ when I told them the joke.
- Can I have that _____ for chocolate cake? It was wonderful.
- I _____ to our neighbour, Mrs Jones, today. She said she was fine.
- She's a very good singer. She has a beautiful _____.
- 'How did you feel before the exam?' 'Very _____.'
- I broke my father's camera yesterday. He was very _____.



OLIVER AND WENDY MINT ▲

HOW *we* MET

▼ TREVOR AND ASTRID RICHARDS



● LISTENING AND SPEAKING

Pre-listening task

- Put the sentences in order. There is more than one answer!
 - ___ They got married.
 - ___ They fell in love.
 - ___ Jane and Roger met at a party.
 - ___ He liked her before she liked him.
 - ___ They have two children.
 - ___ They went out together for a long time.
 - ___ They wrote love letters.
- Are you married? How did you meet your husband/wife? When did your parents meet? Where?
- Look at the photographs of two couples. How old are they? What jobs do they do?
- Check the meaning of new verbs in your dictionary. What is the past tense form of each verb?

hear think wait smile ring tell forget speak laugh

Listening

T 45 Divide into two groups.

- Group A Listen to Wendy Mint.
- Group B Listen to Trevor Richards.

Answer the questions about your couple.

Comprehension check

- a When did they meet?
- b How did they meet?
- c What is his job?
- d Was he at work when they met?
- e What did he/she like about him/her?
- f Are they both English?
- g Who is shy?
- h Wendy talks about a restaurant.
Trevor talks about a cake. Why?
- i When did they get married?
- j Do they work together?
- k Do they have any children?

Speaking

- Find a partner from the other group. Discuss the answers and compare information.
- Imagine that you are Oliver or Astrid. Tell the story of how you met your wife/husband.

● EVERYDAY ENGLISH

1 Ordinals

1 Write the correct word next to the numbers.

| | | |
|------------|------------|--------------|
| fourth | 1st _____ | thirty-first |
| twelfth | 2nd _____ | fifth |
| sixth | 3rd _____ | seventeenth |
| twentieth | 4th _____ | tenth |
| second | 5th _____ | sixteenth |
| thirtieth | 6th _____ | first |
| thirteenth | 10th _____ | third |
| | 12th _____ | twenty-first |
| | 13th _____ | |
| | 16th _____ | |
| | 17th _____ | |
| | 20th _____ | |
| | 21st _____ | |
| | 30th _____ | |
| | 31st _____ | |

T 46a Listen and practise saying the ordinals.

2 Ask and answer questions about the months of the year.

| | |
|---------------------------|------------|
| Which is the first month? | January. |
| Which is the ninth month? | September. |

2 Dates



| | |
|--------------|---|
| We write: | We say: |
| 3/4/1992 | the third of April, nineteen ninety-two |
| or | or |
| 3 April 1992 | April the third, nineteen ninety-two |

Practise saying these dates:

1 April 2 March 17 September 19 November 23 June
15/7/67 29/2/76 19/12/83 3/10/70 31/5/93

T 46b Listen and check.

2 **T 46c** Listen and write the dates you hear.

3 Work in pairs. Ask and answer these questions.

- What's the date today?
- When did this school term start? When does it end?
- When's Christmas Day?
- When's Valentine's Day?
- When's Mothers' Day this year?
- When's American Independence Day?
- What century is it now?
- What are the dates of public holidays in your country?
- When were you born?
- When's your birthday?

GRAMMAR SUMMARY

Past Simple

Negative

Negatives in the Past Simple are the same in all persons.

| | | | |
|------|--------|--------|-------------|
| I | | | |
| You | didn't | go out | last night. |
| She | | | |
| We | | | |
| They | | | |
| etc. | | | |

ago

| | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------|------|
| I went to the States | ten years two weeks a month | ago. |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------|------|

Time expressions

| | |
|----|-------------------------|
| | the twentieth century |
| | 1924 |
| in | winter/summer |
| | the evening/the morning |
| | September |
| | 10 October |
| on | Christmas Day |
| | Saturday |
| | Sunday evening |
| at | seven o'clock |
| | weekends |

Prepositions

I phoned him **at** the end **of** the programme.

My birthday is **on** the tenth **of** October.

Can I ask a question **about** your country?

She fell **in** love **with** his voice.

Study the Word List for this unit on page 125.

STOP AND CHECK

Units 5-8

1 Correcting the mistakes

Each sentence has a mistake. Find it and correct it!

Example

Where ~~you live~~? *Where do you live?*

- My brother go to university.
- English is a language international.
- I don't like swim.
- I arrive at Heathrow airport at ten o'clock last night.
- She could to speak three languages when she was ten.
- Where did you went last night?
- I saw the wife of Jeremy at the shops.
- I don't can go out because I have a lot of homework.
- In the kitchen is a table.
- I was to the cinema last weekend.
- My children like they're school very much.
- I buyed a new video.
- Did you watch the football on TV last evening?
- Italian people is very artistic.
- I like cities because I can to go to the theatre.

15

2 can/could/was/were (not)

Put a verb from the box into each gap.

can/can't could/couldn't was/wasn't were/weren't

Example

I can't drive. I'm only 14 years old.

- Our teacher _____ at school last week because she _____ ill.
- Leonardo _____ a student in Florence. He _____ draw, write music, and design buildings.
- We _____ see the Mona Lisa in the Louvre in Paris.
- 'Where _____ you last night? You _____ at home. I phoned you, but there _____ no answer.'
- 'I _____ get into my flat because I lost my keys. I _____ at a friend's house.'

10

3 Irregular verbs

Write the Past Simple form of these irregular verbs.

- | | |
|---------------|---------------|
| a give _____ | f make _____ |
| b leave _____ | g break _____ |
| c sell _____ | h meet _____ |
| d speak _____ | i win _____ |
| e lose _____ | j take _____ |

10

4 Past Simple

Fill in the gaps with the Past Simple form of the verbs in brackets. There are regular and irregular verbs.

Example

Leonardo da Vinci lived (live) in Italy in the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries.

He was a student in Florence, where he (a) _____ (study) painting, sculpture, and design. He (b) _____ (begin) a lot of paintings, but he (c) _____ (not finish) many of them. His picture of the Mona Lisa is the most famous portrait in the world.

Leonardo (d) _____ (be) interested in many things. He (e) _____ (want) to know about everything he saw. He examined the human body. He (f) _____ (think) that the sun (g) _____ (not go) round the earth. He (h) _____ (write) music. He designed a flying machine 400 years before the first one flew. Many people

(i) _____ (not understand) his ideas. It is difficult to think that one man (j) _____ (can) do so much.



20

5 a/an or nothing?

Some of the sentences need *a* or *an*. Some of the sentences are correct. Put *a/an* or ✓.

Examples

He has ~~good~~ job.

He has a good job.

I don't like cheese.

✓

- a I have toast for breakfast. _____
- b My sister works in office. _____
- c Do you like Indian food? _____
- d Is there Indian restaurant near here? _____
- e Have nice weekend! _____
- f There's good library near my house. _____
- g Meat is expensive. _____
- h My grandfather is engineer. _____

16

6 some/any/a/an

Put *some*, *any*, *a*, or *an* into each gap.

Example

Heathrow is an international airport.

- a Did Charles Dickens have _____ children?
- b I bought _____ newspaper and _____ magazines.
- c Jane lives in _____ old house in France.
- d There are _____ trees in my garden, but there aren't _____ flowers.
- e Do you have _____ books by Gabriel García Márquez?
- f There are _____ letters for you on the table.

8

7 Vocabulary – connections

Match a line in A with a line in B.

Example

Easter Day – egg

| A | B |
|---------------------|--------------|
| Easter Day | sun |
| cupboard | war |
| wallet | borrow |
| library | kitchen |
| check-in desk | egg |
| smell | wedding |
| Welcome to Britain! | luggage |
| son | chef |
| Congratulations! | arrival hall |
| recipe | nose |
| soldier | money |

11

8 Vocabulary – opposites

Match a word in A with its opposite in B.

Example

wonderful – horrible

| A | B |
|-------------|----------|
| wonderful | lose |
| win | early |
| king | queen |
| abroad | horrible |
| before | boring |
| clean | easy |
| late | finish |
| begin | at home |
| interesting | after |
| difficult | dirty |

10

Total 100

TRANSLATE

Translate the sentences into your language. Translate the *ideas*, not word by word.

- Is there a chemist's near here?
- There are two books on the table.
- There are some flowers in the living room.
- Are there any glasses?
- I can type, but I can't spell.
- I couldn't go to the party last night.
- I was ill.
- Where were you born?
- I was born in Mexico.
- She started work when she was twelve.
- He didn't like his first job.
- Where did you go on holiday last year?

UNIT 9

like and would like – some/any – Requests

Food and drink

PRESENTATION (1)

like and would like – some

- 1 Look at the lists of food and drink. What do you like?
What don't you like?

I like tea, but I
don't like coffee.

I really like apples.

I don't like milk
very much.

I don't like tomatoes
at all!

Do you like ... ?

A

tea
coffee
wine
apple juice
beer
milk
water
bread
cheese
ice-cream
chocolate
rice
fruit

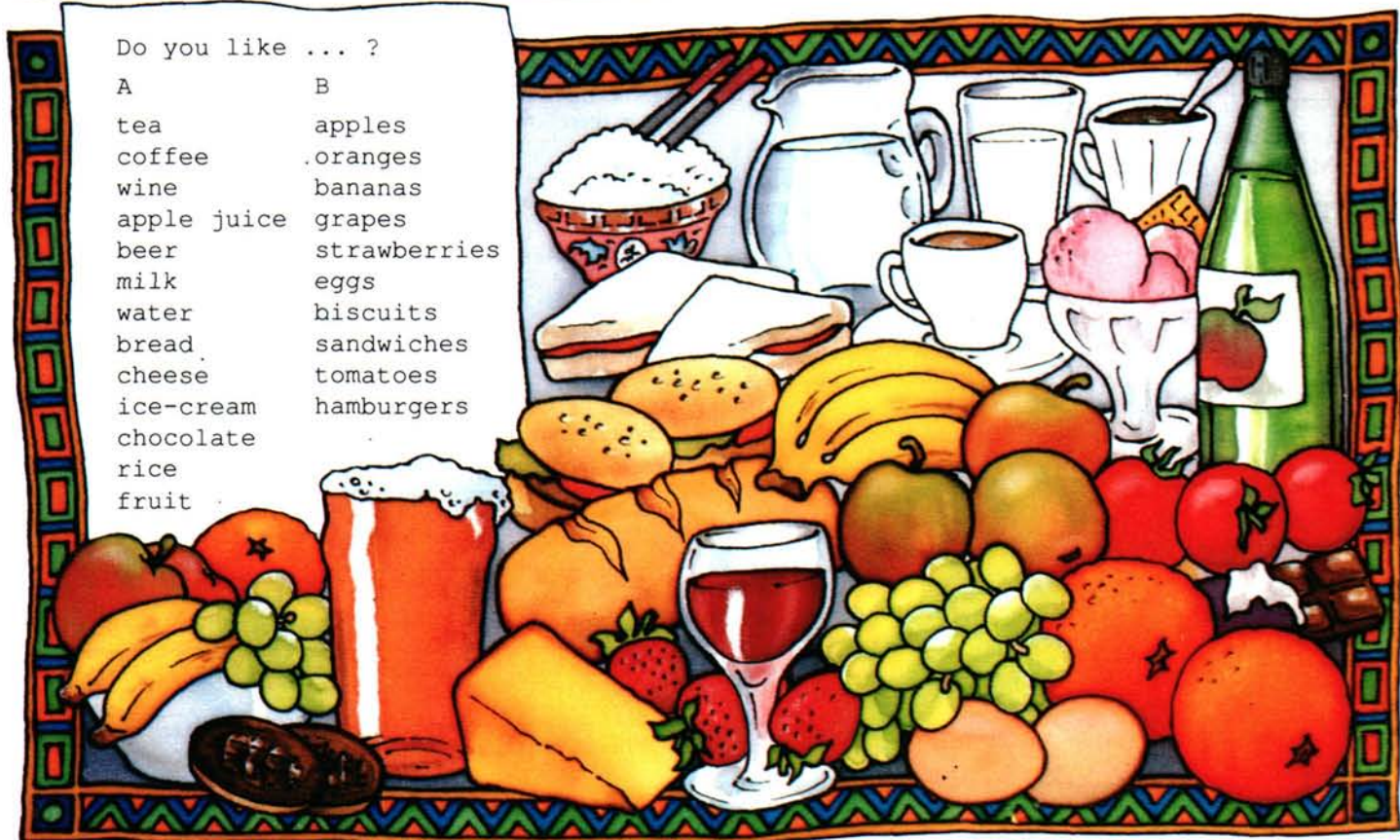
B

apples
oranges
bananas
grapes
strawberries
eggs
biscuits
sandwiches
tomatoes
hamburgers

- 2 **T 47** Listen to two children talking about what they like. Tick (✓) the things they *both* like.
Practise saying some of the sentences.

● Grammar questions

- Look at the sentences. Why is there no -s on *rice*?
Why is there an -s on *apples*?
I like rice.
I like apples.
Can we count apples? Can we count rice?
- Look at the two lists of words in Exercise 1. What is the grammatical difference between them?



- 3 **T 48** Look at the pictures and listen to the conversations.



- a A I'm thirsty.
B Would you like some tea?
A No, thanks.
B Would you like some apple juice?
A Oh, yes, please!



- b A I'm hungry. Is there anything to eat?
B Would you like a biscuit?
A No, thanks. I'd like a sandwich.
B Cheese? Ham?
A Cheese *and* ham, please!

● Grammar question

What is the difference between the sentences in each pair?

I like hamburgers.

I'd like a hamburger, please.

Do you like apple juice?

Would you like some apple juice?

Which sentences are about all time?

Which sentences are about now?

1 I'd = I would

2 We use *some* with plural and uncountable nouns:

some bananas

some rice

3 When we ask for things and offer things, we use *some*, not *any*, in the question.

Would you like some grapes?

Can I have some milk, please?

But:

Would you like a hamburger? (Just one.)

Practice

1 Grammar

Choose the correct sentence. Put ✓ and ✗.

Example

A Would you like a cigarette? ✓
Do you like ✗

B No, thanks. I don't smoke.

a A Do you like your teacher?
Would you like

B Yes. She's very nice.

b A Do you like a drink?
Would you like

B Yes, please. Some Coke, please.

c A Can I help you?

B Yes. I like a packet of cigarettes, please.
Yes. I'd like

d A What sports do you do?

B Well, I'd like swimming very much.
Well, I like

e A Are you ready to order your meal, sir?

B Yes. I like a steak, please.
Yes. I'd like

2 Listening

T 49a Listen to what A says. Choose the correct answer for B. Put ✓ and ✗.

1 a I like all sorts of fruit.

b Yes. I'd like some fruit, please.

2 a I'd like a book by John le Carré.

b I like books by John le Carré.

3 a I'd like a new bike.

b I like riding my bike.

4 a I'd like a cat but not a dog.

b I like cats, but I don't like dogs.

5 a I like French wine, especially red wine.

b We'd like a bottle of French red wine.

6 a No, thanks. I don't like cream.

b I wouldn't like it.

T 49b Listen and check.

- 4 Practise the dialogues in Exercise 3. Make more dialogues with other food and drink.

3 Vocabulary

1 Write *a* or *some*.

a _____ book

b _____ air

c _____ rice

d _____ mushroom

e _____ music

f _____ rain

g _____ ice

h _____ kiss

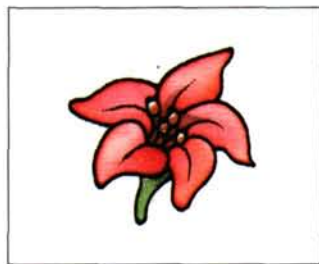
i _____ bacon

j _____ money

k _____ five-pound note

l _____ fruit

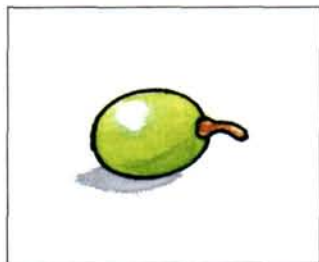
2 Write *a*, *an*, or *some*.



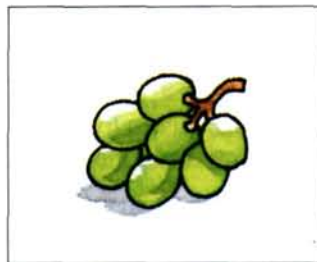
a _____ flower



b _____ flowers



c _____ grape



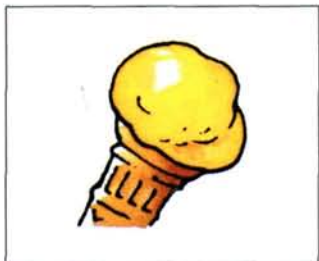
d _____ grapes



e _____ cake



f _____ cake



g _____ ice-cream



h _____ ice-cream

PRESENTATION (2)

some/any

1 Look at the picture. What is there in the shop?

There's some bacon.

There are some newspapers.

She doesn't have any milk.

I can't see any eggs.

2 Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about what there is in the shop.

Is there any orange juice?

Yes, there is.

Does she have any sandwiches?

No, she doesn't.

3 **T 50** Listen to the conversation in the shop and look at the shopping list. Tick (✓) what the man buys. Why doesn't he buy the other things?



Practice

1 Speaking

Look at the price lists. Check the meaning of new words in your dictionary.

Chemist's

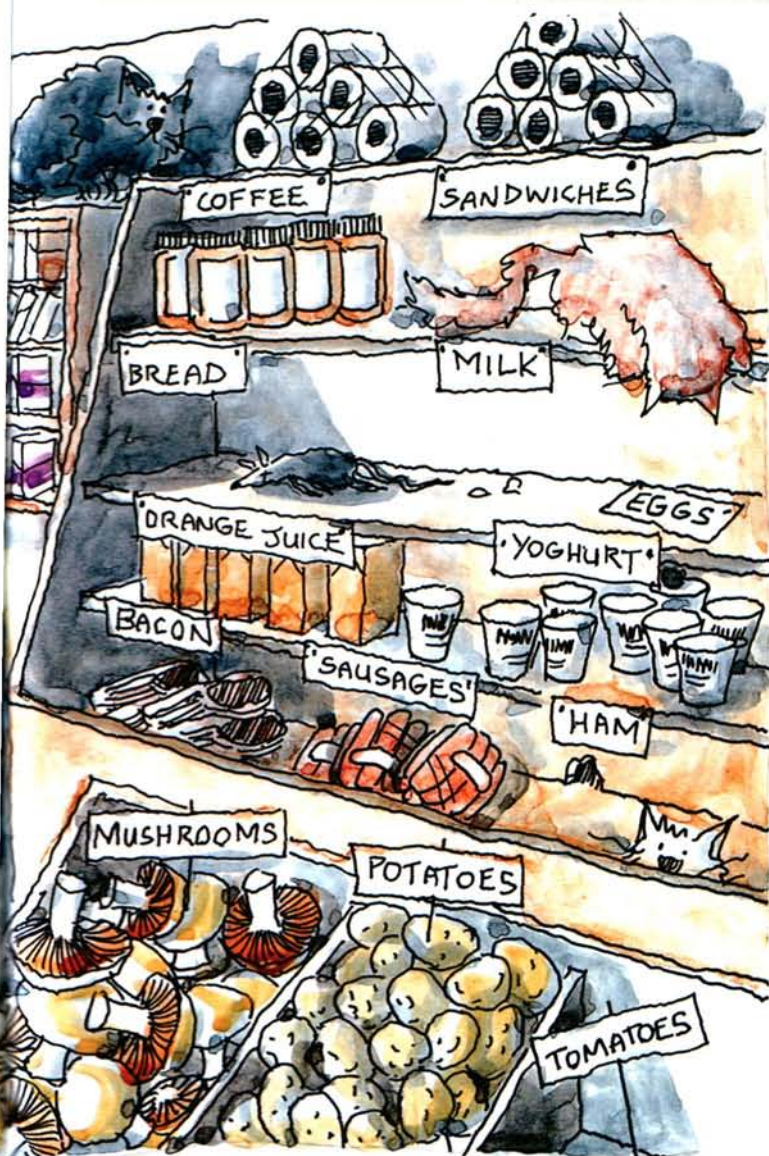
| | |
|---------------------------|-------|
| toothpaste | 75p |
| a bottle of aspirin | £1.80 |
| soap | 60p |
| shampoo | £1.40 |
| conditioner | £1.50 |
| a film | £4.50 |

NEWSAGENT'S

| | |
|------------------------------|-------|
| a packet of cigarettes | £2.50 |
| a box of matches | 10p |
| a book of stamps | £2.20 |
| a phone card | £5.00 |
| chewing gum | 20p |
| paper hankies | 40p |

Art Shop

| | |
|-----------------------|-------|
| a pen | 45p |
| writing paper | £1.15 |
| a birthday card | 95p |
| glue | 75p |
| paints | £3.60 |
| a file | £2.50 |



Roleplay

Work in pairs. Student A is a shop assistant, Student B is a customer.

Can I help you?

Yes, please. I'd like a/some ...

Here you are. Anything else?

Yes. Can I have a/some ...? How much is that?

That's ... , please.

2 Questions and answers

1 Complete the questions using *much* or *many*.

- How _____ people are there in the room?
- How _____ money do you have in your pocket?
- How _____ cigarettes do you smoke a day?
- How _____ petrol is there in the car?
- How _____ potatoes do you want?
- How _____ eggs do you want?
- How _____ beer is there in the fridge?

2 Choose an answer for each question in Exercise 1.

- A kilo.
- There are six cans.
- A packet of twenty.
- Three pounds fifty p.
- Half a dozen.
- Twenty. Nine men and eleven women.
- It's full.

3 Correcting the mistakes

Each sentence has a mistake. Find it and correct it!

Example

How ~~much~~ apples do you want?

How ~~many~~ apples do you want?

- I don't like an ice-cream.
- Can I have a bread, please?
- I'm hungry. I like a sandwich.
- Would like you a cup of coffee?
- I have thirsty. Can I have a drink?
- I'd like some fruits, please.
- How many money do you have?

READING AND LISTENING

Pre-reading task

- 1 What's your favourite food?
What do you eat with it?
When do you have it?
- 2 You are going to read a text about what British people eat and when.
What do you want to know? Write some questions.

Examples

What do they have for breakfast?

Do they have hot things or cold things?

Do they eat a lot of fish?

Reading

Read the text and match a photograph with each paragraph.

MEALS IN BRITAIN

A traditional English breakfast is a very big meal – sausages, bacon, eggs, tomatoes, mushrooms But nowadays many people just have cereal with milk and sugar, or toast with marmalade, jam, or honey. Marmalade and jam are not the same! Marmalade is made from oranges and jam is made from other fruit. The traditional breakfast drink is tea, which people have with cold milk. Some people have coffee, often instant coffee, which is made with just hot water. Many visitors to Britain find this coffee disgusting!

For many people lunch is a quick meal. In cities there are a lot of sandwich bars, where office workers can choose the kind of bread they want – brown, white, or a roll – and then all sorts of salad and meat or fish to go in the sandwich. Pubs often serve good, cheap food, both hot and cold. School-children can have a hot meal at school, but many just take a snack from home – a sandwich, a drink, some fruit, and perhaps some crisps.

'Tea' means two things. It is a drink and a meal! Some people have afternoon tea, with sandwiches, cakes, and, of course, a cup of tea. Cream teas are popular. You have scones (a kind of cake) with cream and jam.

The evening meal is the main meal of the day for many people. They usually have it quite early, between 6.00 and 8.00, and often the whole family eats together.

On Sundays many families have a traditional lunch. They have roast meat, either beef, lamb, chicken, or pork, with potatoes, vegetables, and gravy. Gravy is a sauce made from the meat juices.

The British like food from other countries, too, especially Italian, French, Chinese, and Indian. People often get take-away meals – you buy the food at the restaurant and then bring it home to eat. Eating in Britain is quite international!

Comprehension check

- 1 Can you answer your questions from the Pre-reading task?
- 2 Are the sentences true (✓) or false (✗)? Correct the false sentences.
 - a Many British people have a big breakfast.
 - b People often have cereal or toast for breakfast.
 - c Marmalade is different from jam.
 - d People drink tea with hot milk.
 - e Many foreign visitors love instant coffee.
 - f All British people have a hot lunch.
 - g Pubs are good places to go for lunch.
 - h British people eat dinner late in the evening.
 - i Sunday lunch is a special meal.
 - j When you get a take-away meal, you eat it at home.



Listening

T 51 You are going to hear six short conversations. Match each conversation with a photograph on page 66. What is the relationship between the people?

Examples

Mother and daughter. / Two friends.

Speaking and writing

1 What do you know about meals in other countries?

People in Japan eat a lot of fish and rice.

Spanish people eat late in the evening.

2 Talk about what people in your country eat and when they eat it.

3 Write a similar paragraph about meals in your country.

VOCABULARY

Food

Look at the word search below. There are seventeen words connected with food.

They go across → and down ↓.

Find them and write them here. The words begin with these letters.

| | | |
|---------------|---------|---------|
| M _____ | B _____ | C _____ |
| C _____ | R _____ | F _____ |
| B _____ | V _____ | Y _____ |
| P _____ | E _____ | G _____ |
| S <u>teak</u> | B _____ | H _____ |
| J _____ | L _____ | |

| | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| L | C | Y | P | N | C | R | I | S | P | S | M |
| A | V | Z | O | B | P | B | A | N | A | N | A |
| M | U | S | T | E | A | K | N | B | T | R | R |
| B | Z | Q | A | M | O | Y | R | Y | J | A | M |
| K | G | F | T | G | H | O | D | F | G | H | A |
| B | A | C | O | N | F | G | R | A | P | E | L |
| H | J | K | F | I | S | H | T | Y | U | I | A |
| H | O | N | E | Y | B | U | B | R | E | A | D |
| R | A | S | D | F | G | R | Z | K | L | P | E |
| I | B | V | E | G | E | T | A | B | L | E | I |
| C | Z | X | C | V | B | N | M | L | P | G | J |
| E | W | E | C | E | R | E | A | L | B | G | U |

Make your own word search. Use words connected with drinks. Give it to a partner.

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

In a hotel

1 Read this conversation in a hotel and put the lines in the correct order.

Certainly. A single room or a double?

Just this one bag.

Yes, sure. Do you want my address, too?

Here's your key. Your room number is 311. I hope you enjoy your stay.

Single, please.

1 Good evening. Can I help you?

A shower. How much is the room?

Yes, please. Could I have a room for the night?

No, thanks. Just breakfast. Can I pay by credit card?

Yes, of course. We take Visa and Access. Could you sign the register, please?

No. Just a signature. Do you have any luggage?

Would you like a room with a shower or a bath?

£72 for the room and breakfast. Would you like an evening meal?

14 Thanks.



We use *Could I ...?* to ask for things.

Could I have a room for the night?

We use *Could you ...?* to ask other people to do things for us.

Could you sign the register, please?

T 52 Listen and check.

2 Look at the tapescript on page 119 and practise the conversation.

- 3 Look at the requests of a hotel guest. Complete them, using *Could I ...?* or *Could you ...?*



In the restaurant

- _____ have the menu, please?
 _____ give me the bill?
 _____ have some coffee, please?



In the bedroom

- _____ have breakfast in my room, please?
 _____ clean my shirts, please?
 _____ wake me up at 7.00 tomorrow morning?



At the reception desk

- _____ change some traveller's cheques?
 _____ recommend a good restaurant?

- 4 Work in pairs. Practise some conversations in a hotel, using the ideas above. One of you is the guest, the other the waiter or receptionist.

GRAMMAR SUMMARY

would like

Would is the same in all persons. We use *would like* in offers and requests.

Positive

| | | |
|-----------|---------|----------|
| I | | |
| You | | |
| He/She/It | 'd like | a drink. |
| We | | |
| They | | |

'd = would

Yes/No questions

| | | |
|-------|--------------------------|-----------------|
| Would | you he/she/it they | like a biscuit? |
|-------|--------------------------|-----------------|

Short answers

Yes, please.
 No, thank you.

Countable and uncountable nouns

Some nouns are countable.

a book – two books
 an egg – six eggs

Some nouns are uncountable.

bread
 rice

Some nouns are both!

Do you like ice-cream?
 We'd like three ice-creams, please.

How much ...? and How many ...?

We use *How much ...?* with uncountable nouns.

How much rice would you like?

We use *How many ...?* with countable nouns.

How many cigarettes do you smoke a day?

some

We use *some* in positive sentences with uncountable nouns and plural nouns.

| | | | |
|-----------|------|---------|---------------|
| There is | some | bread | on the table. |
| There are | | oranges | |

We use *some* in questions when we ask for things and offer things.

| | | | |
|----------------|------|-----------------|---------------------------------|
| Can I have | some | coffee, please? | (I know there is some coffee.) |
| Would you like | | grapes? | (I know there are some grapes.) |

any

We use *any* in questions and negative sentences with uncountable nouns and plural nouns.

| | | | |
|---------------|-----|-----------|---|
| Is there | any | water? | (I don't know if there is any water.) |
| Does she have | | children? | (I don't know if she has any children.) |
| I can't see | | rice. | |
| There aren't | | people. | |

Prepositions

a bottle **of** aspirin
 a packet **of** cigarettes

They have cereal **for** breakfast.
 Marmalade is made **from** oranges.

Study the Word List for this unit on page 125.

UNIT 10

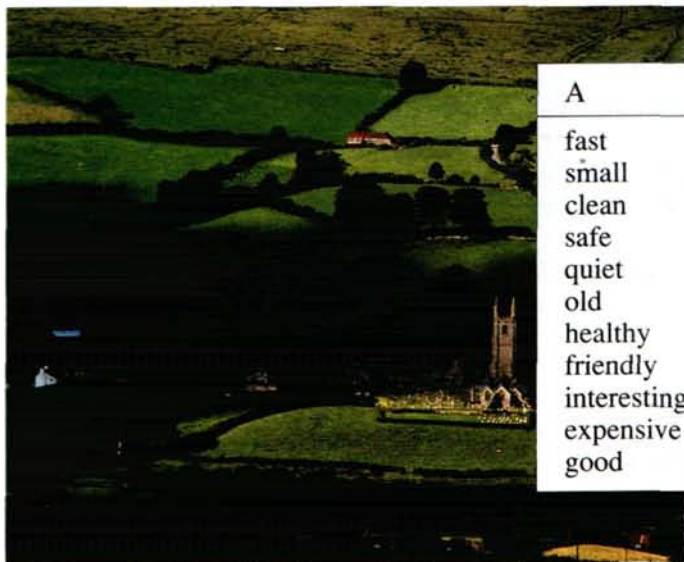
Comparatives and superlatives – *have got* – Directions (2)

Describing places

PRESENTATION (1)

Comparative adjectives

- 1 Match an adjective in A with its opposite in B. Check the meaning of new words in your dictionary.

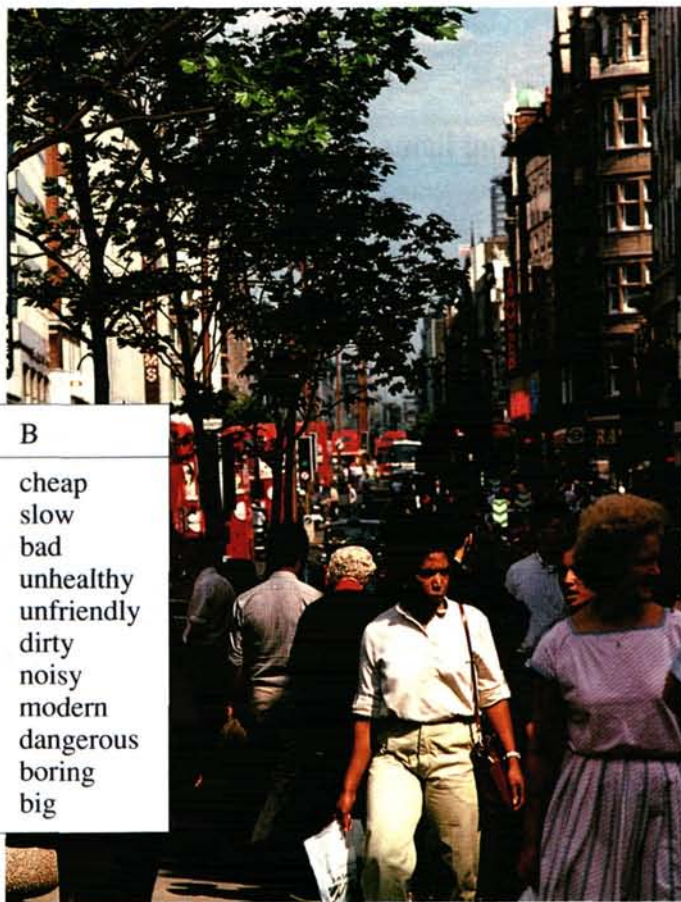


A

fast
small
clean
safe
quiet
old
healthy
friendly
interesting
expensive
good

B

cheap
slow
bad
unhealthy
unfriendly
dirty
noisy
modern
dangerous
boring
big



- 2 Which adjectives describe life in a city? Which describe life in the country?
- 3 Make sentences comparing life in the city and country.

| | | |
|-------------------------------|--|-------------------------------------|
| The city is The country is | cheaper safer noisier healthier more expensive more interesting better | than the country. than the city. |
|-------------------------------|--|-------------------------------------|

- 4 **T 53** Listen and compare your sentences with the ones on the tape. Are they the same or different? Practise saying some of the sentences. Be careful with the sound /ə/.

/ə/

/ə/ /ə/ /ə/

The country is cheaper than the city.

/ə/

/ə/ /ə/ /ə/

The city is noisier than the country.

Grammar question

We use *-(e)r* and *more* to make comparative adjectives. Can you make any rules?

Practice

1 Using dictionaries

- 1 Dictionaries usually show irregular comparative and superlative forms of adjectives. Does your dictionary do this?

big /bɪg/ *adj.* (bigger, biggest)

good /ɡʊd/ *adj.* (better, best)

- 2 What is the comparative form of the other adjectives in A and B on page 69?
- 3 Make more sentences comparing life in the city and life in the country.

2 Grammar and listening

Complete the conversations as shown in the example.

Example

A Life in the country is *slower* than city life. (slow)

B Yes, the city's much *faster*.

a A The country is _____ the city. (quiet)

B Yes, that's true. The city is much _____.

b A New York is _____ London. (safe)

B No, it isn't. New York is much _____.

c A The streets of New York are _____ the streets of Paris. (clean)

B No, they aren't. They're much _____.

d A Paris is _____ Madrid. (big)

B No, it isn't. It's much _____.

e A Madrid is _____ Rome. (expensive)

B No, it isn't. Madrid is much _____.

f A The buildings in Rome are _____ the buildings in New York. (modern)

B No, they aren't. They're much _____.

g A The Underground in London is _____ the Metro in Paris. (good)

B No, it isn't! The Underground is much _____.

T 54 Listen and check. Practise saying some of the sentences.

PRESENTATION (2)

have got

Amy moved from London to Seaton, a small country town on the south coast of England. Her friend Fran can't understand why she left London.

- 1 **T 55** Listen to their telephone conversation.



Fran Why did you leave? You had a _____ job in London.

Amy Yes, but I've got a _____ job here.

Fran And you had a _____ flat in London.

Amy Well, I've got a house here.

Fran Really? How many bedrooms has it got?

Amy Three. And it's got a garden. It's _____ than my flat and it's _____. Everything is much _____ here.

Fran But you haven't got any friends!

Amy I've got a lot of friends here. Everybody is very _____. People are much _____ than in London.

Fran But the country's so _____!

Amy No, it isn't. It's much _____ than London. Seaton has got shops, cinemas, theatres, and parks. And the air is _____ and the streets are _____.

Fran OK. OK. Everything is _____! So when can I visit you?



Complete the conversation with the correct adjectives. Some are comparatives and some are not.



- 1 When we talk about possession, *have got* means the same as *have*. We often use *have got* in spoken English.

I've (I have) got a house. = I have a house.
He's (He has) got a car. = He has a car.

- 2 The past of both *have* and *have got* is *had*.

- 2 Find other examples of *have got* in the text. Change them to *have* and use the correct form of *do* when necessary.

Example

I've got a better job. *I have a better job.*

- 3 Work in pairs. Practise the conversation using *have got*. Try to change some of the adjectives.

Practice

1 Grammar

Read about *have got* in the Grammar Summary on page 76.
Rewrite the sentences using the correct form of *have got*.

Example

London has a lot of parks. *London's got a lot of parks.*
I don't have much money. *I haven't got much money.*

- I have a lot of homework tonight.
- Do you have any children?
- Our school has a library, but it doesn't have any computers.
- My friends have a CD player.
- I don't have a Walkman.
- Does your house have a garden?

2 Speaking

Roleplay

Work in pairs. Student A is a king, Student B is a queen of a different country. Your teacher will give you each some information. Ask and answer questions to find out who is richer!



PRESENTATION (3)

Superlative adjectives

FOR SALE



ROSE COTTAGE

- * £115,000
- * Built in 1750
- * 2 bedrooms, bathroom, living room, kitchen
- * Beautiful garden, 20 metres long
- * 50 metres from the sea
- * 2 kilometres from the shops and town centre



SEAVIEW

- * £135,000
- * Built in 1927
- * 3 bedrooms, 2 bathrooms, living room, dining room, kitchen, study
- * Garage
- * Garden, 30 metres long
- * 500 metres from the sea
- * 1 kilometre from the shops and town centre.



PARK HOUSE

- * £ 95,000
- * Built in 1975
- * Three bedrooms, bathroom, living room, kitchen/ breakfast room
- * Big garage
- * Small garden, 8 metres long
- * 1.5 kilometres from the sea.
- * 50 metres from the town centre, next to the park.

1 Look at the photographs and read about the three houses.

Here are some sentences about the houses. Are they true (✓) or false (✗)?

Correct the false sentences.

Examples

Seaview is cheaper than Rose Cottage. ✗

No, it isn't. It's more expensive.

Park House is the cheapest. ✓

- Seaview is the most expensive house.
- Seaview is more modern than Park House.
- Park House is the most modern house.
- Seaview is the biggest house.
- Park House is smaller than Rose Cottage.
- Seaview hasn't got a garage.
- Park House has got a bigger garden than Rose Cottage.
- Seaview has got the biggest garden.
- Park House is the nearest to the town centre.
- Park House is the farthest from the sea.

● Grammar questions

Look at the correct (✓) answers. They all have superlatives. Answer the questions.

- How do we make the superlative of one-syllable adjectives?
- How do we make the superlative of longer adjectives?
- Which adjectives are irregular?

2 **T 56** Listen and repeat.

Practice

1 Writing and speaking

- 1 Complete the questions about Park House.
 - a How much _____ ?
 - b How old _____ ?
 - c How many bedrooms _____ ?
 - d _____ it _____ garden?
 - e How big _____ ?
 - f How far _____ from the sea/town centre?

- 2 Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions comparing all the houses.

How much does Park House cost?

£95,000.

Is it the cheapest?

Yes, it is.

Has it got the biggest garden?

No, it hasn't.

2 Grammar and listening

- 1 Complete the sentences using the superlative form of the adjective.

Example

That house is very old.

Yes, it's *the oldest house* in the village.

- a The Ritz is a very expensive hotel.
Yes, _____ in London.
- b Hambledon is a very pretty village.
Yes, _____ in England.
- c Everest is a very high mountain.
Yes, _____ in the world.
- d Meryl Streep is a very popular actress.
Yes, _____ in America.

- e Mr Clark is a very funny teacher.

Yes, _____ in our school.

- f Maria is a very intelligent student.

Yes, _____ in our class.

- g This is a very easy exercise.

Yes, _____ in the book.

T 57a Listen and check.

- 2 **T 57b** Close your books. Listen to the first line and give the answer.

3 Speaking

How well do you know the other students in your class? Describe them using comparative and superlative adjectives.

I think Roger is the tallest.
He's taller than Carl.

I'm the most intelligent!

Maria's the youngest.

I'm older than Peter.

4 Choosing the correct sentence

One sentence has a mistake. Choose the correct sentence. Put ✓ and ✗.

- 1 a Yesterday was more hot than today.
b Yesterday was hotter than today.
- 2 a She's taller than her brother.
b She's taller that her brother.
- 3 a I'm the most young in the class.
b I'm the youngest in the class.
- 4 a Last week was busier than this week.
b Last week was busyer than this week.
- 5 a He hasn't got any sisters.
b He doesn't got any sisters.
- 6 a Do you have any bread?
b Do you got any bread?
- 7 a My homework is the baddest in the class.
b My homework is the worst in the class.
- 8 a Exercise 2 is the most difficult in the book.
b Exercise 2 is most difficult in the book.

VOCABULARY AND PRONUNCIATION

Town and country words

- 1 Look at the words in the box. Match a picture with a word. Which things do you usually find in towns? Which in the country? Which in both? Put them into the correct columns.

| Town | Country | Both |
|------|---------|------|
| | | |



- 2 Put a word or phrase from Exercise 1 into each gap.

- There's a _____ of Prince Albert near the Royal Albert Hall.
- _____ are bigger than hills.
- It's cheaper to travel by _____ than by underground.
- Stop! The _____ are red.
- She lives in the prettiest _____ in the village.
- New York has got a lot of _____.
- There was a famous musician at the _____ last week.
- _____ is a problem in many big towns. The air is much dirtier than in the country.

- 3 Is the letter *r* pronounced in these words?

Example

farm ✗ factory ✓

traffic bridge car park theatre
underground tram concert river

T 58a Listen and repeat.

- 4 Look at the phonetic spelling of some of the other words.

/leɪk/ /maʊntɪnz/ /bɪldɪŋz/ /stætfuː/
/vɪlɪdʒ/ /kɒntɪdʒ/

T 58b Listen and repeat.

READING AND SPEAKING

Two capital cities

Pre-reading task

- 1 Match a country in Eastern Europe with its capital city.

| | |
|-----------|--------------------|
| Budapest | Romania |
| Sofia | Poland |
| Prague | Bulgaria |
| Warsaw | The Czech Republic |
| Bucharest | Albania |
| Tirana | Hungary |

- 2 There were a lot of changes in the countries of Eastern Europe in the 1980s and 1990s. What were they?

Reading

Divide into two groups.

Group A Read about Budapest.

Group B Read about Prague.

Answer the questions in the Comprehension Check. Check the meaning of new words in your dictionary.

BUDAPEST

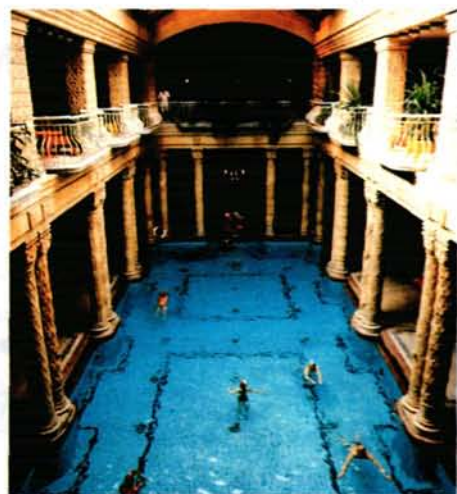
Budapest has a population of over two million people. One in every five Hungarians lives there. The River Danube divides the city into two parts. On the west bank there are the woods and hills of Buda and the old town. On the east bank there is the bigger and more modern Pest, the business and shopping centre. From Buda there are wonderful views of Pest and the river. Six bridges join Buda and Pest.

Important dates in the history of Budapest

For nearly a thousand years Buda and Pest were two towns. Then in 1873 they joined and became one city, Budapest. Until 1939 Budapest was one of the most important cultural capitals of Europe. Then World War II started. In 1945 the city was in ruins and the Communists took control. In 1956 the people tried to free themselves. They pulled down a statue of Stalin and fought the soldiers, but they were not successful. Communist rule did not end until 1989.

The city today

Budapest is very unusual because it has two completely different parts. You can choose the peace and quiet of Buda's woods or the excitement of Pest, where there are good



▲ Relaxing in one of the city's spa baths

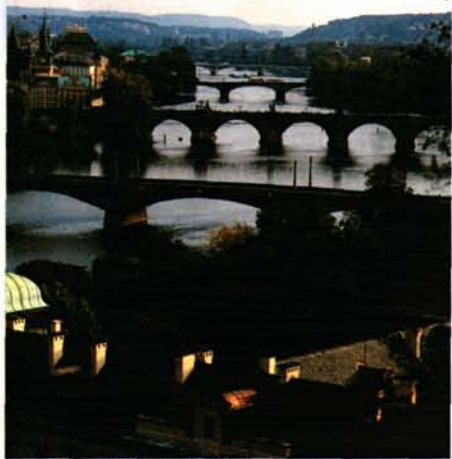
theatres, restaurants, bars, and shops.

The public transport system in Budapest is one of the best and cheapest in the world. You can travel easily by underground, bus, tram, and taxi, but driving a car in Budapest is not a good idea! There are not many car parks. Most cars are old, so pollution is very bad.

The healthiest thing to do in the city is to visit one of the thirty spa baths and swimming pools. The mineral waters of Budapest are famous, and a very popular way to relax.



▲ Chain Bridge over the Danube



▲ Bridges over the River Vltava

▼ Prague Castle and Charles Bridge



PRAGUE

Prague has a population of over one million people. It is not the biggest city in Europe, but it is certainly one of the most beautiful. It is built on seven hills on the banks of the River Vltava. Fifteen bridges cross the river. The most famous is Charles Bridge, which joins Prague Castle and the old town. The view of the castle from the river is very famous.

Important dates in the history of Prague

Prague did not become the capital until October 1918, after World War I, when Czechoslovakia became an independent country. Twenty years later, in 1938, it lost its independence again before World War II. After the war, in 1948, the Communists took control. In 1968 the people tried to free themselves. They fought the soldiers in Wenceslas Square, but they were not successful. Communist rule did not end until 1989.

The city today

Some people say Prague is the most beautiful city in the world! They call it 'The Golden City' and 'The Mother of Cities' because it still has many beautiful medieval buildings and statues. Perhaps the most popular building is the Old Town Hall with its amazing 15th



▲ Old Town Hall with its famous clock

century astronomical clock.

People also call Prague 'Europe's School of Music'. There are many concert halls, and every May there is a famous music festival: 'Prague Spring'. There are also twenty theatres and many old pubs, wine bars, and restaurants.

There is now a modern underground, but traffic is still a problem. It is often better to walk and feel the atmosphere of the pretty little streets.

Comprehension check

- 1 What can you see in the photos of your city?
- 2 How many people live there?
- 3 What is the name of its river?
- 4 How many bridges are there?
- 5 When did it become the capital?
- 6 When did the Communists take control? When did they lose control?
- 7 When and how did the people try to free themselves?
- 8 What is the best way to get round the city?

- 9 Which of these things can you do if you visit the city?

Put ✓ or ✗.

- | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| a go to the theatre | e travel by underground |
| b walk in the woods | f go to a famous music festival |
| c walk round the old town | g relax in the spa waters |
| d travel by tram | h see a famous astronomical clock |

Check your answers with your group.

Speaking

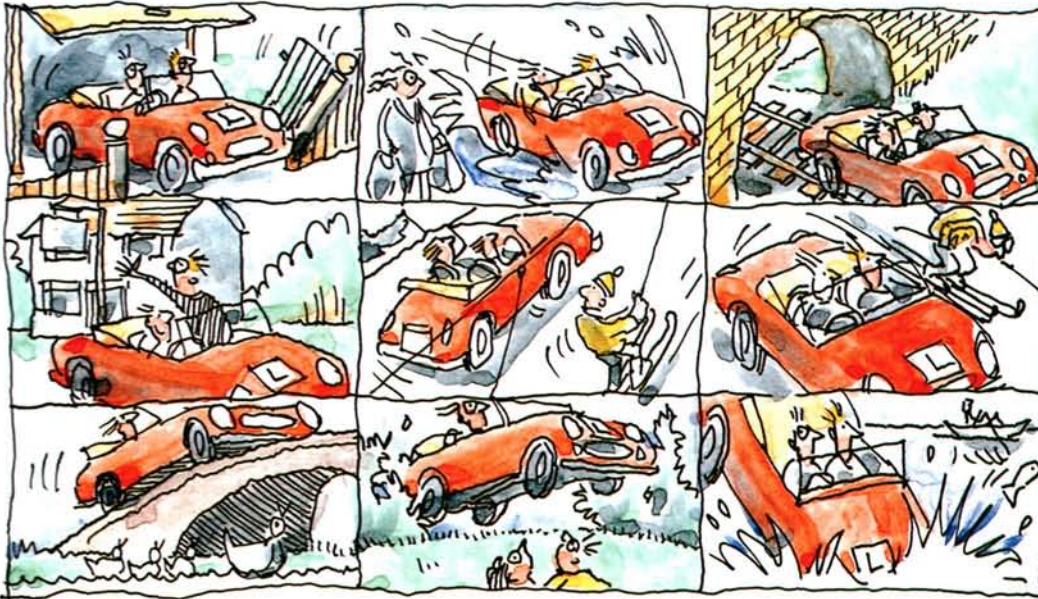
- 1 Find a partner from the other group. Compare the two cities.
- 2 Now read the other text. Ask your partner about new words.

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Directions (2)

- 1 **T 59a** Look at the pictures and listen to Robert talking about his driving lesson. Put a preposition from the box into each gap.

| | | | | |
|-------|---------|-------|--------|------|
| along | down | into | out of | over |
| past | through | under | up | |



Robert's driving lesson

Robert drove

_____ the garage,
_____ the road, and
_____ the bridge.

Then he drove

_____ the pub,
_____ the hill, and
_____ the hill.

Next he drove

_____ the river,
_____ the hedge, and
_____ the lake!

Look at the pictures again and tell the story of Robert's driving lesson.

- 2 **T 59b** Listen to Louisa giving directions from her school to her house. Mark the route on the map. Then fill in the gaps.



Go _____ the school and turn _____. Walk _____ Station Road _____ the railway station and the _____. Turn _____ at the _____ and walk _____ the _____ and _____ the _____. Turn right _____ Park Avenue. My house is the _____ on the left. It's number _____. It takes ten minutes.

- 3 Work in pairs.

Student A Think of a place near your school. Give your partner directions, but don't say what the place is!

Student B Listen to the directions. Where are you?

GRAMMAR SUMMARY

Comparative and superlative adjectives

| | Adjective | Comparative | Superlative |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------------------|--|
| One-syllable adjectives | old safe big hot | older safer bigger hotter | the oldest the safest the biggest* the hottest* |
| Adjectives ending in -y | noisy dirty | noisier dirtier | the noisiest the dirtiest |
| Adjectives with two or more syllables | boring beautiful | more boring more beautiful | the most boring the most beautiful |
| Irregular adjectives | good bad far | better worse farther | the best the worst the farthest |

* Adjectives which end in one vowel and one consonant double the consonant.

Examples

You're **older than** me.

New York is **dirtier than** Paris.

Prague is one of **the most beautiful** cities in Europe.

have got and have

Have got means the same as *have* to talk about possession, but the form is very different. We often use *have got* in spoken English.

have got

Positive

| | | | |
|------|------|-----|-----------|
| I | | | |
| You | have | | a cat. |
| We | | | |
| They | | got | |
| He | | | |
| She | has | | a garden. |
| It | | | |

Negative

| | | | |
|------|---------|-----|-----------|
| I | | | |
| You | haven't | | a dog. |
| We | | | |
| They | | got | |
| He | | | |
| She | hasn't | | a garage. |
| It | | | |

Questions

| | | | |
|----------------------------------|------------------------|-----|------------|
| Have | I you we they | | any money? |
| | | got | |
| Has | he she it | | a sister? |
| How many children have they got? | | | |

Short answers

Yes, I have./No, I haven't

Yes, she has./No, she hasn't.

have

Positive

| | | | |
|------|------|--|-----------|
| I | | | |
| You | have | | a cat. |
| We | | | |
| They | | | |
| He | | | |
| She | has | | a garden. |
| It | | | |

Negative

| | | | |
|------|---------|------|-----------|
| I | | | |
| You | don't | | a dog. |
| We | | | |
| They | | have | |
| He | | | |
| She | doesn't | | a garage. |
| It | | | |

Questions

| | | | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------|------|------------|
| Do | I you we they | | any money? |
| | | have | |
| Does | he she it | | a sister? |
| How many children do they have? | | | |

Short answers

Yes, I do./No, I don't.

Yes, she does./No, she doesn't.

Prepositions

The country is quieter **than** the city.

The house is 50 metres **from** the sea.

Everest is the highest mountain **in** the world.

Study the Word List for this unit on page 125.

UNIT 11

Present Continuous – *Whose ...? It's mine.* – In a clothes shop

Describing people

PRESENTATION (1)

Present Continuous

- 1 Look around the classroom. Find things that are these colours.

red blue brown black green yellow grey pink

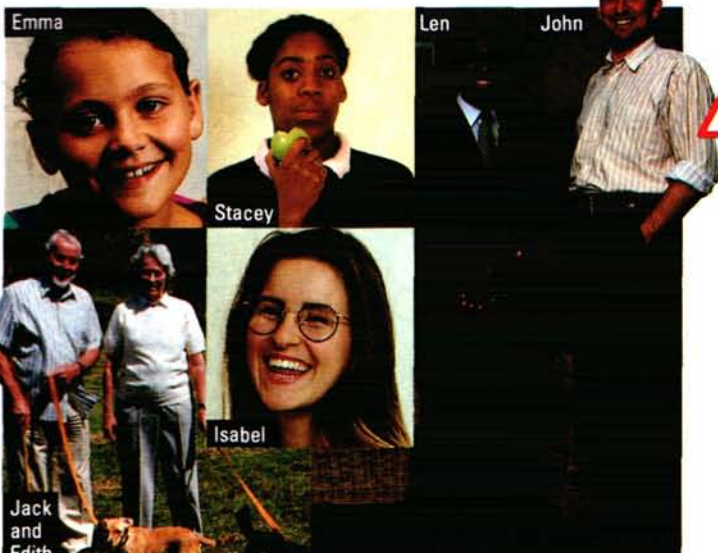
Can you see these clothes?

a jumper a shirt a T-shirt a dress a skirt
a jacket a suit a tie
trousers jeans trainers shoes boots

- 2 Look at the photographs. Who's got ...?

| | | | |
|-------|------|-------------|------|
| long | hair | blue | eyes |
| short | | brown | |
| blond | | | |
| fair | | | |
| brown | | a moustache | |
| black | | a beard | |

Len's got short black hair and a beard.



Who ...?

is pretty
is handsome
is good-looking

is quite tall
isn't very tall
is slim

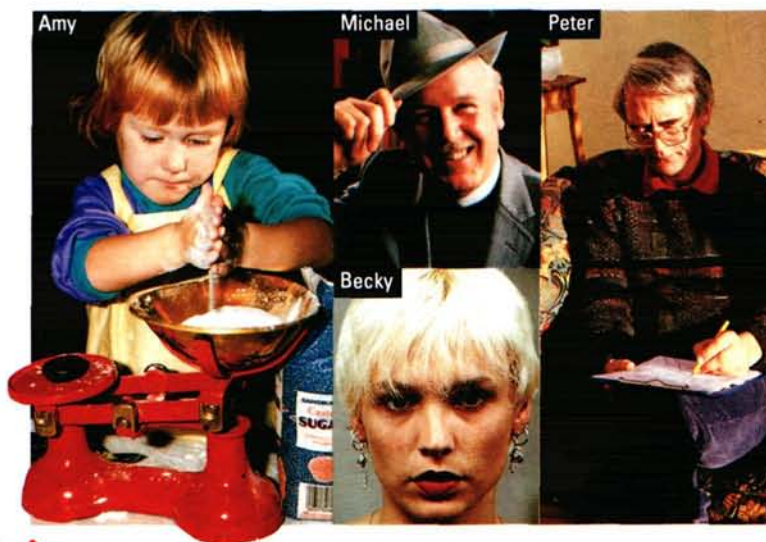
Who ...?

is smiling
is wearing glasses
is writing
is standing up

is cooking
is holding a dog
is wearing earrings
is sitting down

Emma's smiling.

Peter's sitting down.



- 1 *Am/is/are + adjective* describes people and things.
He is old/tall/hungry/tired.
- 2 *Am/is/are + verb+ -ing* describes activities happening now.
I'm learning English.
He's wearing a suit.
They're cooking.
She isn't smiling.
This is the Present Continuous tense.

3 Work in pairs.

Student A Choose someone in the classroom, but don't say who.

Student B Ask Yes/No questions to find out who it is!

Is it a girl?

Yes, it is.

Is she sitting near the window?

No, she isn't.

Has she got blond hair?

No, she hasn't.

Practice

1 Listening and writing

1 **T 60** Peter is at a party, but he doesn't know anyone. Listen to Mary, who's giving the party, telling him about the other guests. Write the names next to the people.

2 Mary uses the Present Simple tense and the Present Continuous tense. Can you remember what she says and complete the sentences below?

Present Continuous

Paul *He's sitting at the table.*

_____ to Kathy.

Kathy _____ T-shirt.

Suzie _____ wine.

Alex _____ a cigar.

Laura _____ crisps.

and Ellie

Present Simple

_____ in LA.

_____ house.

books.

world.

_____ School.



2 Grammar

1 Put the verb in brackets into the Present Continuous tense.

a Oh, no! It _____. What a pity! (rain)

b I _____ a very good book at the moment.
(read)

c We _____ champagne because it's our wedding anniversary. (drink)

d I _____ hard because we have exams next week. (work)

e 'What Peter on the floor?' (do)

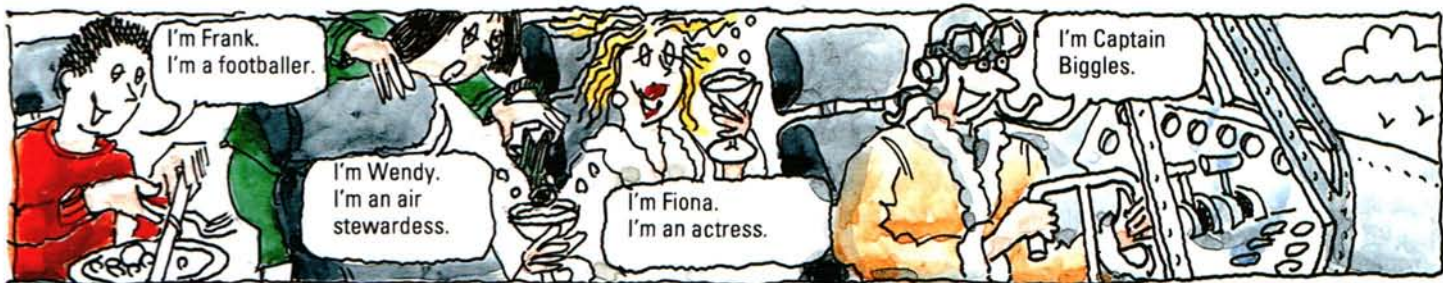
'He _____ for his glasses.' (look)

f 'Why _____ you _____?' (run)

'Because I _____ to a party and I'm late.' (go)

g The photocopier _____. Phone the engineer.
(not work)

h I _____ any more work. I'm tired. (not do)



2 Look at the picture and answer the questions.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| a What does Captain Biggles do? | f What does Wendy do? |
| b Is he flying a plane now? | g What's she doing now? |
| c What does Fiona do? | h What does Frank do? |
| d Is she acting now? | i Is he playing football now? |
| e What's she doing? | j What's he doing? |

3 Speaking

Work in pairs.

Your teacher is going to give you each a picture of a holiday scene. There are ten differences! Don't show your picture! Talk about the pictures to find the ten differences.

Three people are having a drink.

How many people are swimming?

PRESENTATION (2)

Whose ...? It's mine.

1 Look at the pictures. Put a word from the box into each gap.

ours mine his hers theirs yours



- a Excuse me! Is this your ball?
No, it isn't mine. It's his.



- b Is this _____?
No, it isn't _____. It's _____.



- c Excuse me! Is this your ball?
No, it isn't _____. I think it's _____.



- d Hello. Is this yours?
No, it isn't _____. It's the dog's!

T61 Listen and check.

2 Ask and answer questions with *Whose ...?* about these things.

Whose is this hat?

It's his.



- 1 *Whose ...?* asks about possession.
Whose hat is this?
Whose is this hat?
Whose is it?

- 2 *Careful!*
Who's your teacher? = Who is your teacher?

- 3 It's hers. = It's her hat.

Practice

1 Grammar

- 1 Choose the correct word.

Example

I like your/~~your~~ house.

- a Ours/Our house is smaller than their/theirs.
b And their/theirs garden is bigger than our/ours, too.
c My/Mine children are older than her/hers.
d Her/Hers children go to the same school as my/mine.
e This book isn't my/mine. Is it your/yours?
f 'Whose/Who's winning the match?' 'Peter is.'
g 'Jamie's crying, but it wasn't my/mine fault.'
'Well, whose/who's fault was it, then?'
h Whose/Who's going to the party tonight?

- 2 **T 62** Listen to the sentences.

If the word is *Whose* ...?, shout '1'!

If the word is *Who's* ...?, shout '2'!

2 Speaking

- 1 The house is in a mess! Read the conversation.

- A Whose is this tennis racket?
B It's mine.
A What's it doing here?
B I'm playing tennis this afternoon.



The Present Continuous can also describe activities happening in the near future.

I'm playing tennis this afternoon.

We're having fish for dinner tonight.

- 2 Work in pairs. Make more dialogues.

- a football boots? / John's / playing football later
b ballet shoes? / Mary's / going dancing tonight
c suitcase? / mine / going on holiday tomorrow
d coat? / Jane's / going for a walk soon
e plane ticket? / Jo's / flying to Rome this afternoon
f all these glasses? / ours / having a party tonight

3 Correcting the mistakes

Each sentence has a mistake. Find it and correct it!

- a Alice is tall and she's got long, black hairs.
b James is quiet old, about sixty-five.
c I'm wearing a jeans.
d Look at Roger. He stands next to Jeremy.
e He's work in a bank. He's the manager.
f What is drinking Suzie?
g I no working any more. I'm tired.
h Where you going tonight?
i What you do after school today?

VOCABULARY AND PRONUNCIATION

Words that rhyme

- 1 Match the words that rhyme.



- T 63** Listen and check. Practise saying the words.

- 2 Write one of the words on each line according to the vowel sound.

a /e/ bread

g /u:/ _____

b /i/ _____

h /a:/ _____

c /æ/ _____

i /iə/ _____

d /ɑ:/ _____

j /e/ _____

e /i:/ _____

k /eə/ _____

f /ɔ:/ _____

l /əʊ/ _____

● LISTENING

Pre-listening task

- 1 What do you do before you go to a big party? Does it take you a long time to get ready? What are your favourite clothes? Do you dance?
- 2 You are going to hear a song written by Eric Clapton called *Wonderful tonight*. Read the words of the song and put one of the words or phrases in the list into each gap. There are more words than gaps!

Listening

- 1 T 64 Listen to the song and check the words.
- 2 Find the mistakes in this summary and correct them.

A husband and wife got ready and went to a party. The party started in the early evening. He thought she looked very pretty, but he didn't say anything. There were only two or three other people at the party. He was angry with his wife, and she was worried about him. He loves her very much, but she doesn't love him. At the end of the party he didn't feel very well. He drove the car home. He had another drink before he went to bed.

wonderful TONIGHT



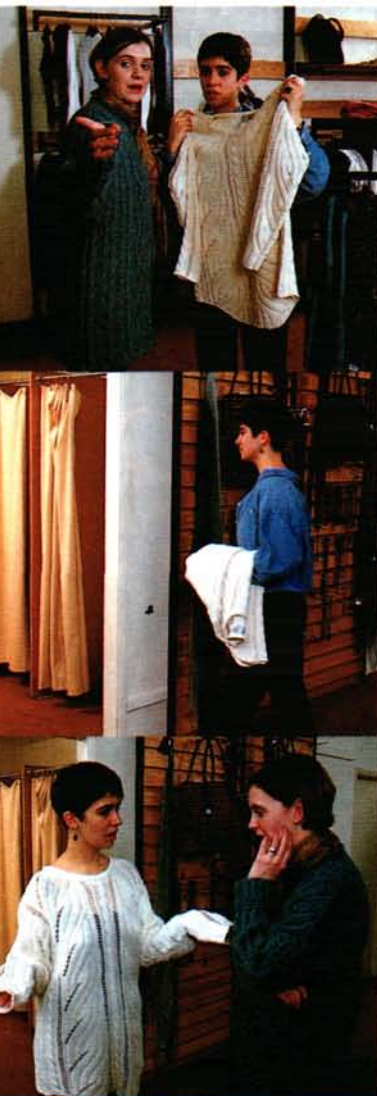
It's late in the _____
 She's wondering what _____ to wear.
 She _____ on her make-up,
 Then _____ her long _____ hair.
 And then she asks me,
 'Do I look _____?'
 And I say, 'Yes,
 You _____ wonderful tonight.'
 We go to a party
 And _____ turns to see
 This _____ lady
 That's _____ around with me.
 And then she asks me,
 'Do you feel all right?'
 And I say, 'Yes,
 I _____ wonderful tonight.'
 I feel wonderful
 _____ I see
 The love light in your _____.
 And the wonder of it all
 Is that you just don't realize
 How much I _____ you.
 It's time to go _____ now
 And I've got an aching _____.
 So I give her the _____,
 She helps me to bed.
 And then I tell her
 As I turn out the _____,
 I say, 'My _____,
 You _____ wonderful tonight.'

feel
 head
 heart
 eyes
 all right
 because
 were
 blond
 light
 darling
 everyone
 morning
 evening
 home
 bed
 walking
 beautiful
 clothes
 puts
 love
 car keys
 brushes
 look



In a clothes shop

- 1 Look at the lines of some conversations in a clothes shop. Who says them, the customer or the shop assistant? Put C or A.



Can I try it on?
Mm, that's nice.
Medium.
Can I help you?
Is it the right size?
How much is it?
Have you got something bigger?
By credit card.
This one's a bit darker.
What size are you?
No, thanks. I'm just looking.
Yes, the changing rooms are over there.
Blue.
Yes, it feels fine.
It's a bit too big/small/long/short.
£19.99.
Yes, I'm looking for a jumper.
No, I don't like the colour.
What about this one?
That's the last we've got, I'm afraid.
I'll have it, please.
I'll leave it, thanks.
What colour are you looking for?
Thank you. How would you like to pay?



'll = will. Will is an auxiliary verb.

I'll have it.

I'll leave it.

In these sentences, will expresses a decision.

- 2 Can you match any lines?

Example

'Can I help you?' 'No, thanks. I'm just looking.'

T 65 Listen and check. In pairs, practise the dialogues.

- 3 Work in pairs. Make more conversations in a clothes shop. Use real clothes if you can.

GRAMMAR SUMMARY

Present Continuous

The Present Continuous describes an activity happening now.

She's wearing jeans.

I'm studying English.

It also describes an activity in the near future.

I'm playing tennis this afternoon.

Jane's seeing her boyfriend tonight.

Positive and negative

| | | | | |
|-------------------|-----|-------|-------|----------|
| I | am | | | |
| He She It | is | (not) | going | outside. |
| We You They | are | | | |

Question

| | | | |
|-------|-----|-------------------|--------|
| | am | I | |
| | is | he/she/it | |
| Where | are | we you they | going? |

Yes/No questions

Are you having a good time?

Is my English getting better?

Are they having a party?

Short answers

Yes, we are.

Yes, it is.

No, they aren't.

Present Simple and Present Continuous

The Present Simple describes things that are always true, or true for a long time.

I come from Switzerland.

He works in a bank.

The Present Continuous describes activities happening now, and temporary activities.

Why are you wearing a suit? You usually wear jeans.

Whose + possessive pronouns

Whose is this book?

Whose book is this?

It's

mine.
yours.
hers.
his.
ours.
theirs.

Prepositions

I'm looking for a jacket.

Study the Word List for this unit on page 125.

UNIT 12

going to – Infinitive of purpose – Suggestions

Planning the future

PRESENTATION (1)

going to

- Look at the photographs of Gemma, 11, and her teacher Miss Black, 62. They both have plans for the future.

When I grow up ...



When I retire ...



Read the future plans. Which do you think are Gemma's? Which are Miss Black's? Write G or B next to each sentence.

- G** I'm going to be a ballet dancer.
 ___ I'm going to travel all over the world.
 ___ I'm going to learn to drive.
 ___ I'm going to learn Russian.
 ___ I'm going to write a book.
 ___ I'm going to open a school.
 ___ I'm not going to marry until I'm thirty-five.
 ___ I'm not going to wear skirts and blouses.
 ___ I'm going to wear jeans and tracksuits all the time.
 ___ I'm going to become a TV star.

T 66 Listen and check. Were you correct?

- Talk first about Gemma, then about Miss Black. Use the ideas in Exercise 1.

Gemma's going to be a ballet dancer.

She's going to ...

She isn't going to ...

Which two plans are the same for both of them?

They're both going to ...

Grammar questions

- What are the present tense forms of the verb *to be*? What are the negatives?
- Complete the rule.

We make the *going to* future with the auxiliary verbs

am, _____, _____ + *going to* + _____.

- T 67a** Listen and repeat the questions and answers about Gemma.

What's she going to be? A ballet dancer.
 What's she going to do? Travel all over the world.

- Make more questions about Gemma's plans and match them with an answer.

| | |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| Why/she/learn French and Russian? | Until she's seventy-five. |
| When/marry? | Two. |
| How many children/have? | Dancing. |
| How long/work? | Not until she's thirty-five. |
| What/teach? | Because she wants to dance in Paris and Moscow. |

- T 67b** Listen and check. In pairs, practise saying the questions and answers.

Practice

1 Writing and speaking

- 1 Are you going to do any of these things after the lesson?
Write your answers.

Example
watch TV

I'm going to watch TV. / I'm not going to watch TV.

- | | |
|-----------------------|------------------|
| a have a coffee | e cook a meal |
| b catch a bus | f go shopping |
| c eat in a restaurant | g wash my hair |
| d meet some friends | h do my homework |

- 2 In pairs, ask and answer the questions in Exercise 1.
Give short answers.

Are you going
to watch TV?

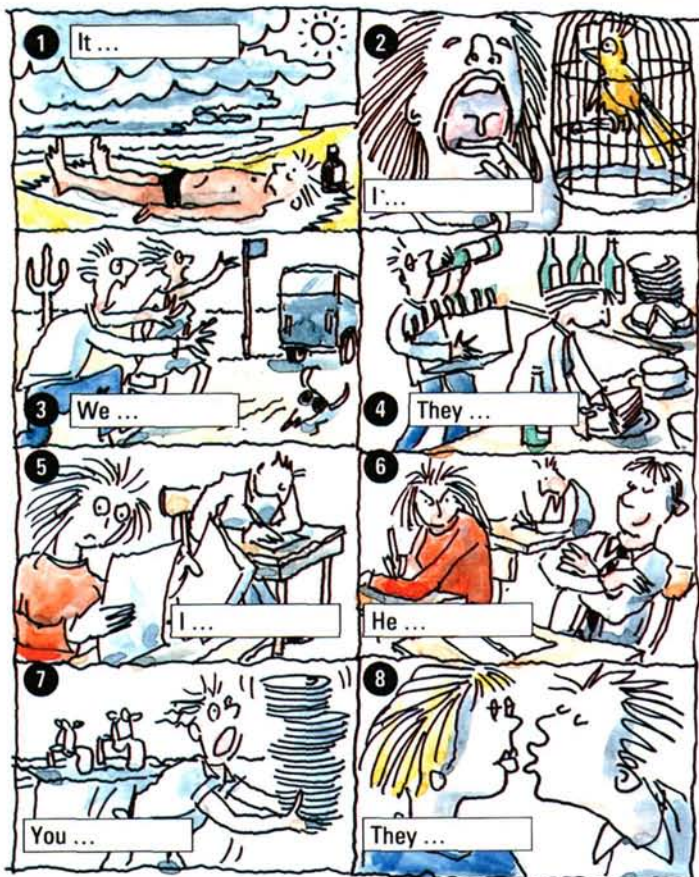
Yes, I am.
No, I'm not.

Tell the class some of the things your partner is or is not
going to do.

2 Writing and listening

- 1 We also use *going to* when we can see *now* that
something is sure to happen in the future.
Look at the pictures and say what is going to happen.
Use the verbs in the box.

have sneeze pass fail miss kiss rain drop



- 2 Put a sentence from Exercise 1 into each gap.

- a Take an umbrella. _____
b Hurry up! _____
c I'm very worried about this exam. I know

d Jack is studying very hard. I know

e Careful! _____
f Look at all that wine and food!

g There's my sister and her boyfriend! Yuk!

h 'Oh dear, _____
Aaattishooo!' 'Bless you!'

T 68 Listen and check.

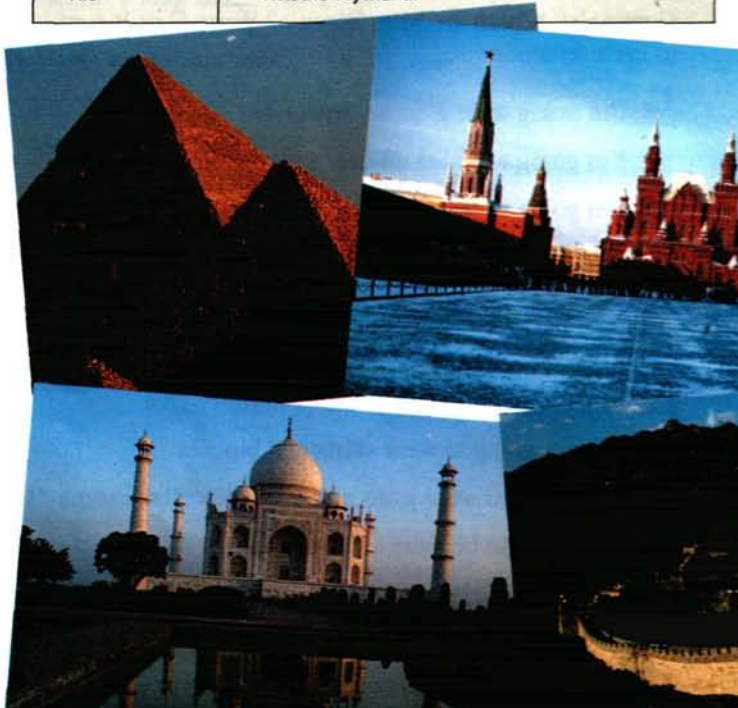
PRESENTATION (2)

Infinitive of purpose

- 1 Match a country or a city with an activity. Check the
meaning of new words with your teacher.

Holland
Norway
Moscow
Spain
Egypt
Kenya
India
China
USA
Rio

visit the pyramids
drive through the Grand Canyon
see the midnight sun
see the tulips
walk along the Great Wall
watch Flamenco dancing
take photographs of the lions
sunbathe on Copacabana beach
walk in Red Square
visit the Taj Mahal



- 2 Miss Black is going to travel round the world. She is going to visit all these countries. She is telling her friend, Arthur, about her plans. Read their conversation and complete the last sentence.

Miss Black First I'm going to Holland.
Arthur Why?
Miss Black To see the tulips, of course!
Arthur Oh yes! How wonderful! Where are you going after that?
Miss Black Well, then I'm going to Norway to _____.

T 69 Listen and check.



With the verbs *to go* and *to come*, we usually use the Present Continuous for future plans.

I'm going to Holland tomorrow.

NOT I'm going to go to Holland tomorrow.

She's coming this evening.

NOT She's going to come this evening.

● Grammar question

- Do these sentences mean the same?

I'm going to Holland to see the tulips.

I'm going to Holland because I want to see the tulips.

Practice

1 Speaking

- 1 Work in pairs. Student A is Miss Black, Student B is Arthur. Ask and answer questions about the places.

Why are you going to Holland?

To see the tulips, of course!

How wonderful!

- 2 Take turns to talk about Miss Black's journey. Use *first*, *then*, *next*, *after that*.

First she's going to Holland to see the tulips.

Then she's ...



- 3 Write down the names of some places you went to last year.

In pairs, ask and answer questions about the places.

Why did you go to England?

To learn English.

Why did you go to Melbourne?

To visit my cousins.

Tell the class about your partner.

2 Grammar

Rewrite the sentences using the infinitive of purpose.

Examples

I'm going upstairs because I want to have a shower.

I'm going upstairs to have a shower.

I went to the supermarket and I bought some biscuits.

I went to the supermarket to buy some biscuits.

- He went to the station and he caught the train.
- She turned on the TV because she wanted to watch the film.
- Are you going to the pub because you want to have a beer?
- Did you open the door because you wanted to get some fresh air?
- I phoned Bill and I told him the news.
- Are you learning English because you want to get a better job?
- They're studying hard because they want to pass their exams.
- I'm going home early because I want to finish my homework.

3 Choosing the correct sentence

One sentence has a mistake. Which is the correct sentence? Put ✓ and ✗.

- Is going to rain.
 - It's going to rain.
- Do you wash your hair this evening?
 - Are you going to wash your hair this evening?
- She's going to have a baby.
 - She's going to has a baby.
- Are they many students in your class?
 - Are there many students in your class?
- I'm going to the Post Office to buy some stamps.
 - I'm going to the Post Office for buy some stamps.
- Every evening I go home and I listen to music.
 - Every evening I'm go home and I listen to music.
- They waited for me in the garden.
 - They waited for my in the garden.
- He can't answer the phone because he's having a bath.
 - He can't answer the phone because he has a bath.

● READING AND SPEAKING

Pre-reading task

- 1 Which of these sports do you think is the most dangerous? Put them in order 1–8. 1 is the most dangerous.

___ cycling ___ motor racing ___ football
___ sailing ___ windsurfing ___ skiing
___ golf ___ mountain climbing

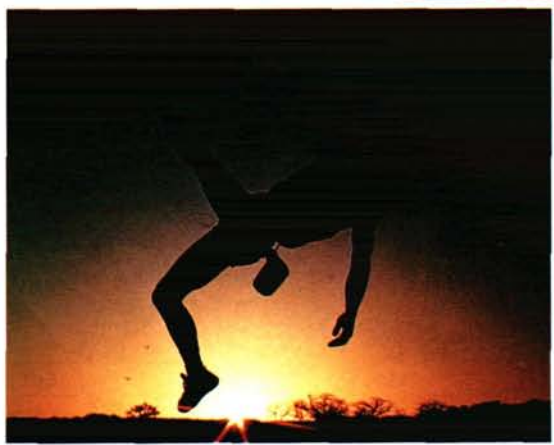
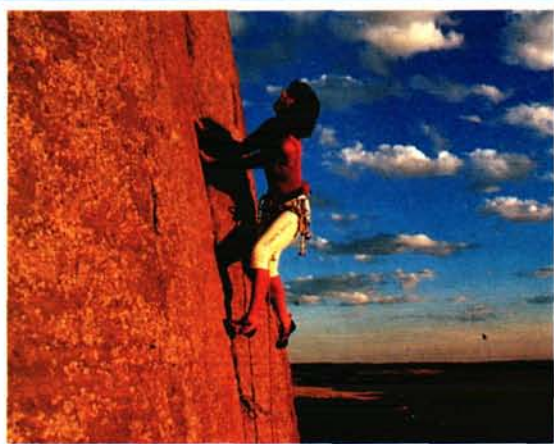
Compare your ideas with a partner and then the class.

- 2 Look at the photographs and find:
a mountain a rock a rope a climber a bivouac

Reading

Quickly read the text about a famous mountain climber, Catherine Destivelle, and answer the questions.

- 1 The title *Rock Star* has two meanings. What are they?
2 Put the four paragraph headings into the correct places in the text.
- a WHY DOES SHE CLIMB?
b HER FUTURE
c HOW DID SHE BEGIN?
d HER BEST CLIMB



THE ROCK STAR!

Catherine Destivelle is a rock star. She loves rock, but she can't sing or play the guitar! She is a rock climber and a big star in France and Italy. She is probably the most famous woman climber in the world because she often climbs without ropes. She climbs in many countries but most often in the French Alps near Chamonix, where she lives.

1

She started climbing near her home in Paris when she was five. Then, at fourteen, she joined the French Alpine Club to learn more, but immediately she climbed better and more quickly than the older members of the club. She won her first competition in Italy in 1985.

2

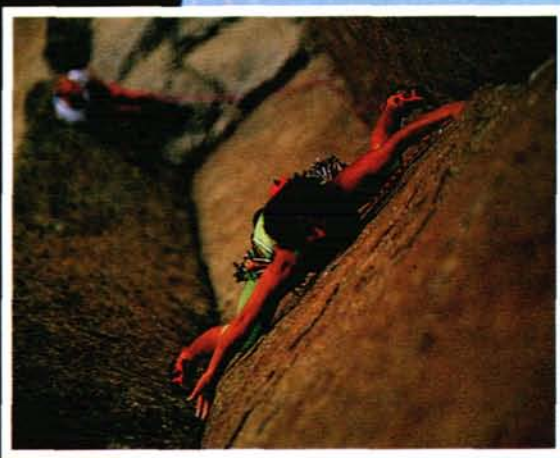
Three years ago she found a new route up the Dru Mountain near Chamonix. The climb took eleven days and for four days the snow was so heavy that she could not move. She slept and ate in a bivouac on the side of the mountain. Last year other climbers tried to follow the new Destivelle Route, but they failed. They are going to try again this year.

3

People always ask her this question. She says 'I climb because I'm in love with mountains. I like touching the rock and reading the face of the rock. I like it a lot. I feel comfortable and at home on the side of a mountain. I prepare well before I go, so I'm never worried.'

4

Catherine chooses new mountains from books – like buying from a shopping catalogue! 'I see a nice mountain and I go to climb it!' Her next mountain is in Pakistan. She is going there next month. 'It's much bigger than the Dru, so it's going to take longer to climb. An American climber, Jeff Lowe, is coming with me to help.'



Comprehension check

Read the article again. Correct these false statements about Catherine.

Example

She lives in Italy.

No, she doesn't. She lives near Chamonix in France.

- a She's good at singing and playing the guitar.
- b She's famous because she climbs in France and Italy.
- c She didn't start climbing until she was fourteen.
- d She learned a lot from the older members of the Alpine Club.
- e The climb up the Dru took four days.
- f She slept and ate in a tent.
- g Climbers followed Catherine's new route last year.
- h She likes reading books when she's on the mountains.
- i She's going to buy a mountain in Pakistan.
- j It's going to take three days to climb this mountain.

Language work

Find examples of the following in the text:

three sentences with a verb in the Present Simple

one sentence with the past of *can*

four sentences with a verb in the Past Simple

four sentences about future plans

two comparative or superlative sentences

Speaking

Roleplay

Work in pairs. Student A is a journalist, Student B is Catherine Destivelle.

Ask and answer questions. Use the paragraph headings to help you.

Good morning, Catherine!
Can I ask you one or two questions?

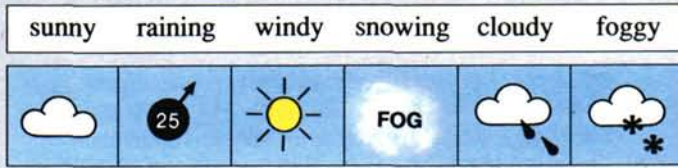
Yes, of course.

First of all, where do you live?

● VOCABULARY

The weather

- 1 Write the correct word under each symbol. Check the meaning of new words in your dictionary.



Which symbols can the following adjectives go with?

hot warm cold wet dry

- 2 **T 70** Listen to the questions and answers and fill in the gaps.

What's the weather like today? It's _____
and _____.

What was it like yesterday? Oh, it was _____
and _____.



In the question *What ... like?*, *like* is a preposition.
It is not a verb as in *I like ice-cream*; *Do you like playing tennis?*

Practise saying the questions and answers.
Ask and answer about the weather today and yesterday.

What's the weather like today?

It's cold and wet.

- 3 Work in pairs. Find out about the weather round the world yesterday.

Student A Look at the information on this page.
Student B Look at the information from your teacher.

Ask and answer questions to complete the information.

What was the weather like in Athens?

It was sunny and warm. 18 degrees Celsius.

WORLD WEATHER: NOON YESTERDAY

| | | °C |
|-------------------|----------|-----------|
| Athens | S | 18 |
| Berlin | R | 7 |
| Bombay | — | — |
| Edinburgh | C | 5 |
| Geneva | — | — |
| Hong Kong | S | 29 |
| Lisbon | — | — |
| London | R | 10 |
| Los Angeles | — | — |
| Luxor | S | 40 |
| Milan | — | — |
| Moscow | Sn | -1 |
| Oslo | — | — |

S = sunny C = cloudy Fg = foggy
R = raining Sn = snowing

Which city was the hottest? Which was the coldest? Which month do you think it is?

● EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Making suggestions

- 1 What do you like doing when the weather is good? What do you like doing when the weather is bad? In pairs, write two lists.
- 2 **T 71** Read and listen to the beginning of two conversations. In pairs, practise saying them.

A It's a lovely day!
What shall we do?
B Let's play tennis!

A It's raining again!
What shall we do?
B Let's stay at home and watch a video.





- 1 *Shall* is an auxiliary verb. We use it to ask for suggestions.

What shall we do tonight? = What do we want to do tonight?

Shall we go swimming?

- 2 *Let's go!* makes a suggestion for everyone. It is like an imperative in the first person plural.

Let's go! = I suggest that we go. (Let's = Let us)

Let's have a pizza!

Let's go home now. It's late.

- 3 Here are the next lines of the two conversations, but they are mixed up. Continue the conversations with the correct lines.

Well, let's go to the beach.
OK. What's on at the Odeon cinema?
Oh no! It's too hot to play tennis.
Oh no! We watched a video last night.
OK. I'll get my swimming costume.
Well, let's go to the cinema.

T 72 Listen and check. In pairs, practise saying the conversations.

- 4 Make more dialogues suggesting what to do when the weather is good or bad. Use the lists of activities you wrote in Exercise 1 to help you.
- 5 Your teacher will give you a list of TV programmes for tonight on channels 1 to 4. Imagine that you and your partner live in the same flat and you only have one TV. Decide together which programmes you are going to watch tonight.

What's on TV tonight?

Shall we watch The Big Match at 8.30?

No, I don't like football.

Well, let's watch the film.

What channel is it on?

GRAMMAR SUMMARY

going to

Going to expresses a person's plans and intentions.

She's going to be a ballet dancer when she grows up.

We're going to stay in a villa in France this summer.

We also use *going to* when we can see *now* that something is sure to happen in the future.

Careful! That glass is going to fall!

Positive and negative

| | | | | |
|-------------------|-----|-------|----------|---------------|
| I | am | (not) | going to | have a break. |
| He/She/It | is | | | |
| We You They | are | | | stay at home. |

Question

| | | | | |
|------|-----|-------------------|----------|---------------|
| When | am | I | going to | have a break? |
| | is | he/she/it | | |
| | are | we you they | | stay at home? |

With the verbs *to go* and *to come*, we usually use the Present Continuous for future plans.

We're going to Paris next week.

Joe and Tim are coming for lunch tomorrow.

Infinitive of purpose

The infinitive can express *why* a person does something.

I'm saving my money **to buy** a CD player.

We're going to Paris **to have** a holiday.

NOT

I'm going shopping ~~for to buy~~ some new clothes.

I'm going shopping ~~for buy~~ some new clothes.

Prepositions

I'm worried **about** the exam.

She's good **at** singing.

She climbs **without** ropes.

What's the weather **like**?

What's **on** at the cinema?

What's **on** TV tonight?

There's a film **on** Channel 4.

Study the Word List for this unit on page 126.

STOP AND CHECK

UNITS 9-12

1 Correcting the mistakes

Each sentence has a mistake. Find it and correct it!

Example

Where ~~you live~~? *Where do you live?*

- It's very hot today – do you like something to drink?
- Peter's got a lot of books because he'd like reading.
- How many children do you got?
- How many money has he got?
- Who's is that new car?
- I'm go home now because it's late.
- Last night I went to a cafe for to meet my friends.
- We're going have a test next week.
- I'm wear old clothes because I'm going to clean the car.
- Pierre is French, he's coming from Paris.
- What you doing tonight?
- My sister is more old than me.
- I think is going to rain.
- Your house is bigger than my.
- Who is the most rich person in the world?

15

2 Questions and answers

Match a question in A with an answer in B.

| A | B |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Whose is this coat? | Yes, of course. What can I do for you? |
| How many cats have you got? | Yes. I think he's very nice. |
| How much did your bike cost? | To buy some toothpaste. |
| Could you help me, please? | To Turkey. |
| Would you like some more to eat? | I stayed at home. |
| Do you like Henry? | Three. |
| Where are you going on holiday? | It's Jane's. |
| Why are you going to the chemist's? | £100. |
| What did you do last night? | Her name's Mrs Taylor. |
| Who's the new teacher? | No, thanks. I'm full. |

10

3 Comparatives and superlatives

Complete the chart.

| Adjective | Comparative | Superlative |
|-----------|----------------|-------------|
| big | _____ | _____ |
| _____ | more beautiful | _____ |
| _____ | _____ | worst |
| exciting | _____ | _____ |
| noisy | _____ | _____ |

10

4 Comparing hotels

- Look at the information about the two hotels. Write five sentences about the hotels using the comparative forms of the adjectives in the box.

Example

good – *The Ritz is a better hotel than The Strand.*

big expensive near far modern

| | The Strand | The Ritz |
|--------------------------------------|------------|------------|
| Number of stars | ★★★ | ★★★★ |
| Number of rooms | 102 | 55 |
| Price | £56-£80 | £90-£110 |
| How many minutes to the sea? | 10 minutes | 15 minutes |
| How many minutes to the town centre? | 20 minutes | 8 minutes |
| Old or new? | New-1990 | Old-1870 |

- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____

10

- 2 Look at the information about The Star Hotel. Write five more sentences, comparing the three hotels. Use the superlative form of the adjectives.

Example

good – *The Star is the best hotel.*

| | The Star |
|--------------------------------------|------------|
| Number of stars | ★★★★★ |
| Number of rooms | 45 |
| Price | £120–£150 |
| How many minutes to the sea? | 1 minute |
| How many minutes to the town centre? | 15 minutes |
| Old or new? | Old–1920 |

- a _____
b _____
c _____
d _____
e _____

10

5 some and any

Put *some*, *any*, or *a* into each gap.

- a Would you like _____ cup of tea?
b You have _____ lovely pictures on the walls!
c Is there _____ water in the fridge?
d Can I have _____ grapes, please?
e I'd like _____ hamburger and _____ chips, please.
f Do you want _____ sandwich?
g The shop doesn't have _____ eggs, peas, or bread.
h There are _____ eggs in the cupboard, but there isn't _____ sugar.

10

6 Present Simple or Present Continuous

Put the verbs in brackets in the Present Simple or the Present Continuous.

- a Pierre _____ (smoke) twenty cigarettes a day, but he _____ (not smoke) now because he's in class.
b Alice and Peter _____ (look) for a new house. They _____ (not like) living in London.
c I always _____ (wear) nice clothes for work. Today I _____ (wear) a blue jacket and skirt.
d 'Why _____ you _____ (go) to bed? It's only 10.00' 'I always _____ (go) to bed early.'
e Jane _____ (work) in a bank, but today she's at home. She _____ (write) letters.

10

7 going to

Complete the sentences with *going to*. Use a verb and a place or person from the boxes.

Example

We're going to buy a book at the bookshop.

| | | | | |
|--------------|-------------|---------|-------------|------|
| buy | write | see | borrow | have |
| the bookshop | my friend | Florida | the library | |
| the theatre | the baker's | | | |

- a Peter _____ some bread at _____.
b I _____ some books from _____.
c We _____ a play at _____.
d They _____ a holiday in _____.
e I _____ a letter to _____.

8 Vocabulary

Put the words in the box in the right columns.

a film fruit a dress a suit mushrooms toothpaste a shirt
cheese aspirin rice jumper soap shampoo shorts cereal

| Clothes shop | Food | Chemist's |
|--------------|------|-----------|
| a dress | | |

15

Total 100

TRANSLATE

Translate the sentences into your language. Translate the *ideas*, not word by word.

- 1 I like Coke. I'd like a Coke.
2 There is some bread on the table. There isn't any coffee.
3 You're older than me, but Tim is the oldest in the class.
4 My sister has got three children.
5 I usually wear jeans, but today I'm wearing a suit.
6 'Whose is this book?' 'It's mine.'
7 We're going to have a party.
8 I went into London to buy some books.

UNIT 13

49

Question forms – Adverbs – At the railway station

41, 42, 43, 44

Did you know that?

PRESENTATION (1)

Question forms

1 Work in groups. Answer the quiz!



General Knowledge Quiz

- ① When did the Berlin Wall come down?
a 1988 b 1989 c 1990
- ② When did the first American walk on the moon?
a 1961 b 1965 c 1969
- ③ Where are the Andes mountains?
- ④ Who did the actress Elizabeth Taylor marry twice?
- ⑤ Who won the 100 metres in the Seoul Olympics?
a Ben Johnson b Carl Lewis
c Ed Moses
- ⑥ How many countries are there in the European Community?
- ⑦ How much does an African elephant weigh?
a 3-5 tonnes b 5-7 tonnes
c 7-9 tonnes
- ⑧ How fast does Concorde fly?
a 2,000 kilometres an hour
b 2,500 kilometres an hour
c 3,000 kilometres an hour
- ⑨ How far is it from London to New York?
a 6,000 kilometres
b 9,000 kilometres
c 12,000 kilometres
- ⑩ How old was Charlie Chaplin when he died?
a 75 b 83 c 88
- ⑪ What languages do Swiss people speak?
- ⑫ What did Columbus discover in 1492?
- ⑬ What sort of music did Elvis Presley play?
a Jazz b Blues c Rock'n'roll
- ⑭ What happens at the end of the story *Cinderella*?
- ⑮ What happened in Chernobyl in 1986?
- ⑯ Why do birds migrate?
- ⑰ Which newspaper does Queen Elizabeth read?
- ⑱ Which language has the most words?
a French
b Chinese
c English



- 2 **T 73** Listen and check. Listen carefully to the intonation of the questions. Practise some of the questions.

● Grammar question

Underline the question words.

Which questions are in the Past Simple, and which are in the Present Simple?

- 3 In groups, write some general knowledge questions. Ask the class!

Practice

1 Question words

Match a question word in A with an answer in B.

| A | B |
|------------|---------------------------------|
| When? | Five. |
| Where? | A book. |
| Who? | 60p. |
| How? | The new one in the High Street. |
| How many? | Because I need it for my job. |
| How much? | Jenny. |
| What? | To the cinema. |
| Why? | By bus. |
| Which one? | Last Saturday. |

2 Grammar

- 1 Put the words in the correct order to make questions. Then choose the correct answers from list B above.

a cigarettes you many do a day how smoke?

b go you night where did last?

c does petrol much a cost litre of how?

d last go you shopping did when?

e restaurant did go to which you?

f come today school how you to did?

g shops did buy the at you what?

h party to speak who did the at you?

i English want learn to you do why?

- 2 In pairs, ask and answer the questions about yourselves.

3 Listening and pronunciation

T 74 Tick (✓) the sentence you hear.

- a Where do you want to go?
b Why do you want to go? ✓
- a Where does she work?
b Where does he work?
- a She walks to the bank.
b She works in a bank. ✓
- a He won the match.
b Who won the match? ✓
- a Did she marry him? ✓
b Is she married, Jim?
- a How old was she?
b How old is she? ✓
- a Johnny Page played the guitar. ✓
b Johnny Page plays the guitar.
- a Where did you go last night?
b Where do you go at night?

4 Speaking

Read the introduction about Laurel and Hardy.



They are called *El Gordo y el Flaco* in Spain, *Helan och Halvan* in Sweden, and *Stanlio e Olio* in Italy, but in English they are called **Laurel and Hardy**, the most famous comedy duo in cinema history.

Work in pairs. Your teacher will give you some more information about Laurel and Hardy, but you do not have the same information.

Ask and answer questions to complete the information.

Example

Student A

Laurel and Hardy met in ...
(Where?) in 1926.

Student B

Laurel and Hardy met in
Hollywood in ... (When?).

Student A

Where did they meet?

Student B

They met in Hollywood.

They met in 1926.

When did they meet?

PRESENTATION (2)

Adverbs

- 1 Look at the sentences.

Lunch is a *quick* meal for many people.
I ate my food *quickly* and left the restaurant.

Quick is an adjective. It describes a noun.
Quickly is an adverb. It describes a verb.

- 2 Are the words in italics adjectives or adverbs?

- a Smoking is a *bad* habit.
- b The team played *badly* and lost the match.
- c Please listen *carefully*.
- d Jane's a *careful* driver.
- e The homework was *easy*.
- f Peter's very good at tennis. He won the game *easily*.
- g I know the Prime Minister *well*.
- h My husband's a *good* cook.
- i It's a *hard* life.
- j Teachers work *hard* and don't earn much money.

Grammar questions

- How do we make regular adverbs? What happens when the adjective ends in -y?
- Which adverbs are irregular?

Practice

1 Listening and speaking

- 1 Check the meaning of these adverbs in your dictionary.

___ quickly ___ slowly
___ carefully ___ suddenly
___ quietly ___ immediately



- 2 **T 75** Listen to a man describing what happened to him in the middle of the night and put the adverbs in the correct order.

- 3 In pairs, tell the story again.

2 Grammar

- 1 Match a verb or phrase in A with an adverb in B. Sometimes, more than one answer is possible.

| A | B |
|---------------------|-----------|
| run | hard |
| work | early |
| get up | fluently |
| speak two languages | carefully |
| do your homework | fast |

- 2 Put the word in brackets in the correct place in the sentence. If necessary, change the adjective to an adverb.
- a We had a holiday in Spain, but unfortunately we had weather. (terrible)
 - b Maria dances. (good)
 - c When I saw the accident, I phoned the police. (immediate)
 - d Don't worry. Justin is a driver. (careful)
 - e Jean-Pierre is a Frenchman. He loves food, wine and rugby. (typical)
 - f Please speak. I can't understand you. (slow)
 - g We had a test today. (easy)
 - h We all passed. (easy)
 - i You speak English. (good)

3 Correcting the mistakes

Each sentence has a mistake. Find it and correct it.

- a Where does live Anna's sister?
- b What sort of music you like?
- c What means *scream*?
- d Did they went out last night?
- e Do you can help me, please?
- f When is going Peter on holiday?
- g I last night to the cinema went.
- h Do your homework very careful.
- i You drive too fastly! Slow down!
- j You're a beautifully dancer!

● VOCABULARY

Talking about a book

- 1 It is a good idea to read stories in English. You can read at home, in bed, on the train, anywhere!

Maria read a story called *The Monkey's Paw*. Match a question about the book with Maria's answers.

Questions about the book


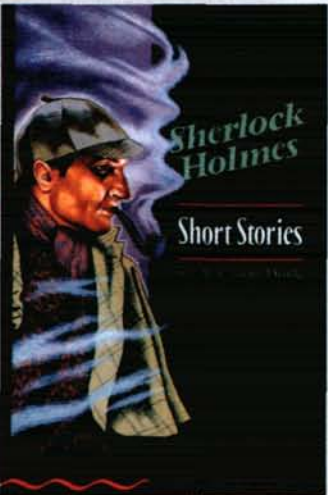
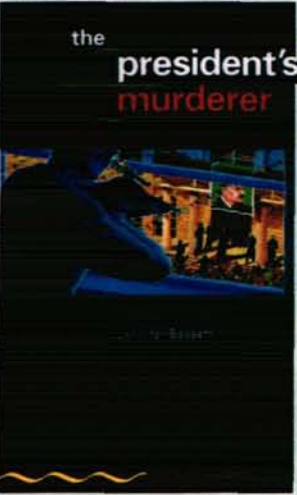
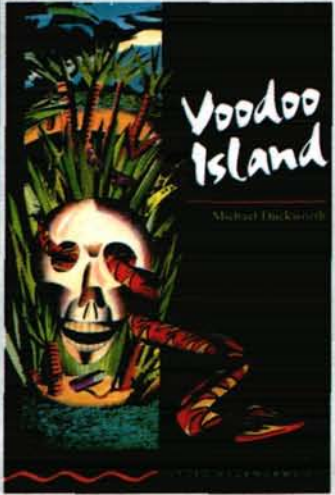
- 1 What's the title of the book?
- 2 What sort of story is it?
- 3 Who are the main characters?
- 4 What's it about?
- 5 What happens in the end?
- 6 Did you enjoy it?
- 7 Do you recommend it?

Maria's answers

- a The son dies in an accident at work.
- b Yes, I do.
- c Old Mr and Mrs White and their son, Herbert.
- d It's called *The Monkey's Paw*.
- e It's a horror story.
- f Yes, I did. It was very interesting.
- g A monkey's paw which is magic. It can give people three wishes, but the wishes don't bring happiness.

T 76 Listen to Maria and check your answers.

- 2 Here are four texts from four books. Match A, B, and C.

| A | B | C |
|---|--|--|
|     | <p>a He was very frightened now. He got up and went to the bathroom to wash his face. He looked in the mirror and screamed. In front of him, in the mirror, there was the head of a dead man. There were no eyes, and no nose, just deep black holes. Then suddenly the head came alive, and it began to laugh.</p> <p>b For the next thirty years the Duke and Duchess lived in Paris. They gave parties and travelled round the world, but they never went back to Buckingham Palace. When King George died in 1952 and Queen Mary died in 1961, Edward returned to Windsor for a few days. But Wallis stayed in France.</p> <p>c That night we went back to the house. When we saw Helen Stonor's lights, Holmes and I got in quietly through the window. Then we waited silently in the middle bedroom. We waited for three hours and did not move. Suddenly we saw a light and heard a sound ...</p> <p>d 'Run!' the man thought. 'Move! Faster! I can't stop now.' Over the man's head the night sky was black and cold, and in front of him were the trees. Tall, dark trees ... 'I can hide there,' the man thought. He looked behind him. He could see the lights. There were five or six men. Then he heard the dogs ...</p> | <p>A DETECTIVE STORY</p> <p>A ROMANCE/ BIOGRAPHY</p> <p>AN ADVENTURE STORY</p> <p>A HORROR STORY</p> |

(These books are part of the *Oxford Bookworm Series*).

READING AND LISTENING

A short story

You will read a story called *The Girl with Green Eyes* from a book of short stories from the *Oxford Bookworm Series* called *One-Way Ticket*.

Pre-reading

- 1 Do you like train journeys? What can you do on a train journey that you can't do on a car journey?
- 2 Do you like looking at people on trains?
Look at picture 1.
Who are friends?
Who are strangers?
Who are husband and wife?
- 3 What do you think happens in the story?

Reading and listening

- 1 **T 77** Read and listen to part 1 of the story. Answer the questions.
 - a Who is related to who?
 - b Who is who in the pictures?
 - c What does Julie think of her husband?
 - d What do you think happens in the story?
- 2 Read and listen to part 2. Answer the questions.
 - e What does Bill do? What does the tall dark man do?
 - f Why does Julie read the back of the newspaper?
 - g Does she look into the tall dark man's eyes the first time? And the second time?
 - h What does she think of the tall dark man?
- 3 Read and listen to part 3. Answer the questions.
 - i What happens when the train arrives at the station?
 - j Who sees Julie get off the train?
 - k 'People don't always need words, young man.' What does the mother mean?
 - l Why does Julie leave her husband?

Vocabulary

Which parts of the body are in the story? Which parts especially? Why, do you think?

Speaking

- 1 Work in groups of three. Student A is Bill, Student B is the little girl, and Student C is the girl's mother. Practise the dialogue from 'Where's Julie?' to the end.
- 2 Look back at the questions on page 95. Use them to ask and answer about *The Girl with Green Eyes*. Retell the story in the Past Simple.



There were seven people in the carriage.



Julie opened her eyes and looked at the back page of the tall dark man's newspaper.



Green eyes looked into dark brown eyes for a long, slow minute.



'She got off the train at Plymouth. With the tall dark man.'

The Girl with Green Eyes

Part 1

'Of course,' the man in the brown hat said, 'there are good policemen, and there are bad policemen, you know.'

'You're right,' the young man said. 'Yes. That's very true. Isn't it, Julie?'

Julie didn't answer and looked bored. She closed her eyes.

There were seven people in the carriage. There was the man in the brown hat; the young man and his wife, Julie; a mother and two children; and a tall dark man in an expensive suit.

The young man's name was Bill. He had short brown hair and a happy smile. His wife, Julie, had long red hair and very green eyes – the colour of sea water. They were very beautiful eyes.

Part 2

Bill and the man in the brown hat talked and talked. The tall dark man took out his newspaper and began to read. Julie opened her eyes and looked at the back page of his newspaper. She read about the weather in Budapest and about the football in Liverpool. She wasn't interested in the weather and she didn't like football, but she didn't want to listen to Bill and the man in the brown hat. 'Talk, talk, talk,' she thought. 'Bill never stops talking.'

Then suddenly she saw the tall man's eyes over the top of his newspaper. She could not see his mouth, but there was a smile in his eyes. Quickly, she looked down at the newspaper again. She read about the weather in Budapest for the third time. Then she looked at the tall man's hands. They were long, brown hands, very clean. 'Nice hands,' she thought. He wore a very expensive Japanese watch. 'Japan,' she thought. 'I'd like to go to Japan.' She looked up and saw the man's eyes again over the top of his newspaper. This time she did not look away. Green eyes looked into dark brown eyes for a long, slow minute.

Part 3

Bill and his new friend went to buy something to eat and drink. The train was nearly at Plymouth. The tall dark man stood up, put the newspaper in his bag, and left the carriage. The train stopped at the station. A lot of people got on the train, and two women and an old man came into the carriage.

The train moved slowly away from Plymouth station, and Bill came back to the carriage. 'Where's Julie?' he said. 'She's not here.'

The little girl looked at Bill. 'She got off the train at Plymouth,' she said. 'With the tall dark man. I saw them.'

'Of course she didn't!' Bill said. 'She's on this train. She didn't get off.'

'Yes, she did,' the children's mother said suddenly. 'I saw her too. The tall man waited for her on the platform.'

'He waited for her?' Bill's mouth was wide open. 'But ... But he read his newspaper all the time. He didn't talk to Julie. And she never talked to him. They didn't say a word.'

'People don't always need words, young man,' the children's mother said.

'But I don't understand,' said Bill. 'She's my wife. Why did she go? Why did she leave me? What am I going to do?'

(Adapted from a story by Jennifer Bassett)

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Catching a train

- 1 Ann lives in London. She wants to go to Newcastle for the day and decides to go by train. She phones the British Rail Talking Timetable Service.

T 78a Listen and complete the timetable. Notice we often use the twenty-four hour clock for timetables.

7.00 in the morning = 0700 (oh seven hundred hours)

| DEPARTURE TIME from KING'S CROSS | ARRIVAL TIME in NEWCASTLE |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 0700 | |
| | 1130 |
| 0950 | |
| | 1437 |
| 1200 | |



- 2 **T 78b** Ann goes to the Information Office at King's Cross station. She wants to know about train times back from Newcastle. Listen and complete the conversation.

A Good morning. (a) _____ the times of trains (b) _____ Newcastle, please?

B Afternoon, evening? When (c) _____ ?
A About five o'clock this afternoon.

B About (d) _____. Right. Let's have a look. There's a train that (e) _____ 4.45, and there's (f) _____ at 5.25.

A And (g) _____ get in?

B Back at King's Cross at 7.15 and (h) _____

A Thanks a lot.

- 3 Ann goes to the ticket office. Put the lines of the conversation in the correct order.



- 1 A Hello. I'd like a ticket to Newcastle, please.
 — A I want to come back this evening, so a day return.
 — C How do you want to pay?
 — A Return, please.
 — C Here's your change and your ticket.
 — C Single or return?
 — A Twenty, forty, sixty pounds.
 — C Day return or period return?
 — A Cash, please.
 — C Forty-eight pounds fifty, please.
 11 A Thank you.

T 78c Listen and check. Close your books. Try to remember the conversations! In pairs, practise saying them.

- 4 **T 78d** Look at the noticeboards at the railway station and listen to the announcement. Correct the mistakes.

ARRIVALS

| FROM | • PLATFORM | TIME | ● ● | REMARK |
|------------|------------|------|-----|---------------|
| Edinburgh | • 18 | 0830 | ● ● | On time |
| Hertford | • 6 | 0835 | ● ● | On time |
| Newcastle | • 15 | 0845 | ● ● | Delay 30 mins |
| Darlington | • 9 | 0845 | ● ● | On time |

DEPARTURES

| DESTINATION | • PLATFORM | TIME | ● ● | REMARK |
|--------------|------------|------|-----|--------|
| Peterborough | • 12 | 0825 | ● ● | Ready |
| Newcastle | • 7 | 0840 | ● ● | Ready |
| York | • 5 | 0850 | ● ● | |

GRAMMAR SUMMARY

Question forms

| | |
|--------------|----------------------------------|
| When | did Columbus discover America? |
| Where | are the Andes? |
| Who | did she marry? |
| How | do you get to school? |
| What | do you have for breakfast? |
| What | happens at the end of the story? |
| Why | do you want to learn English? |

| | |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|
| How many | people are there in the class? |
| How much | does she earn? |
| How far | is it to the centre? |
| What sort of | car do you have? |
| Which newspaper | do you read? |

Adjectives and adverbs

Adjectives describe nouns.

a **big** dog
 a **careful** driver

Adverbs describe verbs.

She **ran quickly**.
 He drives too **fast**.

To form regular adverbs, add *-ly* to the adjective.
 Words ending in *-y* change to *-ily*.

| Adjective | Adverb |
|-----------|-------------|
| quick | quickly |
| bad | badly |
| careful | carefully |
| easy | easily |
| immediate | immediately |

Some adverbs are irregular.

| | |
|-------|-------|
| good | well |
| hard | hard |
| early | early |
| fast | fast |

Prepositions

What's the story **about**?
 What happens **in** the end?
 What do you think **of** Peter?
 I want to go **round** the world.
 A girl **with** green eyes.
 Are you interested **in** ballet?
 The train is **on** time.
 The train leaves **from** platform 9.

Study the Word List for this unit on page 126.

UNIT 14

Present Perfect – Telephoning

In my life

PRESENTATION (1)

Present Perfect + *ever* and *never*

- 1 Look at the countries and tick (✓) those you have visited at some time in your life.



- 2 **T 79a** Read and listen to the sentences. Practise saying them.

I've been to England. I haven't been to Scotland.

I've been to the United States. I've never been to Mexico.

I haven't been to *any* of the countries!

Work in groups. Tell each other which countries in Exercise 1 you have or have not been to.

- 3 **T 79b** Read and listen to the conversation. Practise saying it.

A Have you ever been to Ireland?

B No, I haven't.

A Have you ever been to Scotland?

B Yes, I have.

A When did you go?

B Two years ago.

- 1 We use the Past Simple to talk about definite past time.

When did you go there?

I went there

last year.

two years ago.

in 1992.

We use the Present Perfect to talk about indefinite past time.

Have you ever (at some time in your life) been to Paris?

- 2 We make the Present Perfect tense with *has/have* + the past participle of the verb.

I've (= I have) been to France.

She's (= She has) been to Algeria.

- 4 Write down the names of four capital cities. In pairs, make more dialogues like the one in Exercise 3.

- 5 Tell the class about your partner.

Maria's been to London. She went there two years ago. But she hasn't been to Paris.

Practice

1 Grammar

Here are the past participles of some verbs. Write the infinitive.

| | | | | | |
|---------|--------------|---------|-------|--------|-------|
| visited | <u>visit</u> | seen | _____ | taken | _____ |
| eaten | <u>eat</u> | met | _____ | driven | _____ |
| drunk | _____ | cooked | _____ | lived | _____ |
| stayed | _____ | flown | _____ | bought | _____ |
| won | _____ | written | _____ | had | _____ |
| made | _____ | sent | _____ | done | _____ |

Which are the four regular verbs?

What is the Past Simple form of the irregular verbs? There is a list of irregular verbs on page 127.

2 Listening and speaking

- 1 **T 80** Listen to Roger talking about his life and tick (✓) the things he says he has done.

| | Roger | Teacher | Student |
|--|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| lived in a foreign country | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| worked for a big company | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| stayed in an expensive hotel | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| flown in a jumbo jet | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| cooked a meal for ten (or more) people | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| met a famous person | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| seen a play by Shakespeare | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| driven a tractor | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| been to hospital | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| won a competition | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

- 2 Tell your teacher about Roger and answer your teacher's questions.

He's lived in a foreign country.

Which country did he live in?

Japan.

How long did he live there?

One year.

- 3 Ask your teacher the questions and fill in the chart.

Have you ever lived in a foreign country?

Which country did you live in?

- 4 Ask another student the questions. Tell the class about your partner.

3 Choosing the correct sentence

One sentence has a mistake. Choose the correct sentence. Put ✓ and ✗.

- a I saw John yesterday.

b I've seen John yesterday.
- a Did you ever eat Indian food?

b Have you ever eaten Indian food?
- a Diana won £5,000 last month.

b Diana has won £5,000 last month.
- a I've never drank champagne.

b I've never drunk champagne.
- a Tom has ever been to America.

b Tom has never been to America.
- a Did they live in London five years ago?

b Have they lived in London five years ago?
- a Mary has wrote a lot of books.

b Mary has written a lot of books.
- a Did she write a book last year?

b Has she written a book last year?

PRESENTATION (2)

Present Perfect + yet and just

- 1 Jack and Lilian are in New York on holiday. Before they went, they made a list of things they wanted to do there. Look at the list.



- 2 **T 81** Lilian is talking to her father on the telephone. Listen to their conversation. Put ✓ next to the things she has done and ✗ next to things she has not done yet.

3 Complete the sentences.

- a We _____ been to Greenwich Village yet.
- b Have you _____ the Statue of Liberty yet?
- c We've just _____ a helicopter tour.

Listen and check. Find two more examples of *yet*.

● Grammar questions

- Where do we put *yet* in a sentence?
- Where do we put *just* in a sentence?
- Complete the rule.
We do not use *yet* in positive sentences, only in _____ and _____.

Practice

1 Speaking

- 1 Talk about Jack and Lilian. Say what they have done and what they haven't done yet.

They've climbed the Empire State Building.

They haven't seen a show on Broadway yet.



- 2 Work in pairs. Use the ideas to make questions with *yet* and answers with *just*.

Example

do the washing-up

Have you done the washing-up yet?

Yes, I've just done it.

- a finish your homework
- b wash your hair
- c clean the car
- d meet the new student
- e make the dinner
- f do the shopping
- g talk to the teacher
- h buy your plane ticket

2 Reading

Complete the story. Put the verb in brackets into the Present Perfect or Past Simple tense.



A SAD STORY OF A SAD MAN

One Sunday evening two men (a) _____ (**meet**) in a London pub. One of them was very unhappy.

'Life is terrible, everything in the world is really boring,' he said.

'Don't say that,' said the other man. 'Life is marvellous! The world is so exciting! Think about Italy. It's a wonderful country.'

(b) _____ you ever _____ (**be**) there?'

'Oh, yes. I (c) _____ (**go**) there last year and I (d) _____ (**not like**) it.'

'Well, (e) _____ you _____ (**be**) to Norway? (f) _____ you ever _____ (**see**) the midnight sun?'

'Oh, yes. I (g) _____ (**go**) in 1984 and I (h) _____ (**see**) the midnight sun. I (i) _____ (**not enjoy**) it.'

'Well, I (j) _____ just _____ (**return**) from a safari in Africa. (k) _____ you _____ (**visit**) Africa yet?'

'Yes, I (l) _____ (**go**) on safari in Africa last year and I (m) _____ (**climb**) Mount Kilimanjaro. It was really boring.'

'Well,' said the other man, 'I think that you're very ill. Only the best psychiatrist can help you. Go to see Dr Greenbaum in Harley Street.'

'I am Dr Greenbaum,' answered the man sadly.

3 Grammar

Put a word from the box into each gap.

| | | | |
|--------------|------------|------------|--------------|
| have/haven't | has/hasn't | did/didn't | |
| never | ever | just | yet ago last |

- _____ you go to America _____ year?
- '_____ he _____ been to India?' 'Yes, he _____.'
- '_____ you _____ met the Queen?' No, I _____.'
- 'When _____ you meet your husband?' 'Ten years _____.'
- I _____ finished my homework. Now I can watch TV.
- '_____ you finished your homework _____?'
'No, I _____.'
- I _____ play tennis _____ weekend because it was wet.
- Kate _____ written her thank-you letters _____.
- We _____ been to Spain, but we _____ been to Portugal.
- '_____ they moved to their new house _____?'
'Yes, they moved three days _____.'

READING AND SPEAKING

Three amazing grandmas

You are going to read about three special old ladies.

Pre-reading task

Work in pairs.

- What is a typical grandmother like? What do grandmothers look like? What do they do? Write down some ideas and compare them with your partner's.
- Check the meaning of these words in your dictionary.

| | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| active (<i>adj</i>) | gun (<i>n</i>) |
| antique shop (<i>n</i>) | knit (<i>v</i>) |
| cardigan (<i>n</i>) | military (<i>adj</i>) |
| cockroach (<i>n</i>) | regret (<i>v</i>) |
| civilian (<i>adj</i>) | stocking (<i>n</i>) |
| (do) exercises (<i>n</i>) | toy (<i>n</i>) |

Reading

Divide into three groups.

- Group A Read about Dorothy Moriarty.
Group B Read about Kitty Currie.
Group C Read about Alice Hyde.

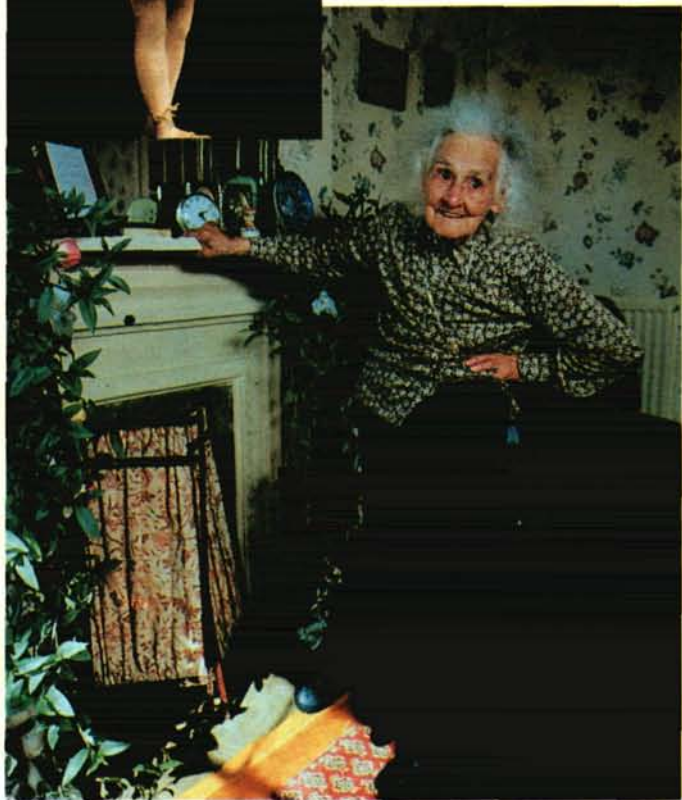
Answer the questions in the Comprehension Check.

THE FIRST MISS WORLD

Alice Hyde is ninety-seven years old and she always watches the Miss World competition on TV. She likes to remember the year 1911, when she became the very first Miss World. 'It was wonderful. My picture was in the best magazines and on postcards. I received hundreds of letters. A lot of men wanted to marry me! Best of all, Charlie Chaplin wrote from America and invited me to Hollywood. I really wanted to go there and be a film star, but my parents said no.'

Instead, in 1912, Alice married Charlie Hyde, a boy from her home town in the north of England. They had five children, four sons and a daughter. When Charlie retired, they moved to Spain and they lived there until Charlie died. Alice came back to England and bought an antique shop, where she worked until last year. 'I've had a wonderful life. I've travelled. I've lived abroad. I've never been to

Hollywood but I don't regret that. I've known true love. My Charlie was the best husband in the world! I'm still healthy and active. I feel much younger than ninety-seven. I've just done my exercises and I'm going to Spain for my summer holiday!'



MY GRANDMA'S A BANK ROBBER!



Kitty Currie is everyone's favourite grandma. She is sixty-eight years old, has snow-white hair and always wears a pink cardigan and carries a big handbag. She likes knitting and looking after her five lovely grandsons. But she's not looking after them at the moment. Kitty Currie has gone to prison! Two months ago, Kitty, who lives in the village of Bovdon in Devon, robbed a bank! She took her grandson's toy gun, put a stocking over her face, and walked into Barclays Bank. She pointed the gun at the cashier and asked for some money. The cashier gave her £20. Kitty

smiled, said 'Thank you very much,' and left. The cashier called the police, and they caught Kitty in the next street. The money, the gun, and the stocking were all in her bag.

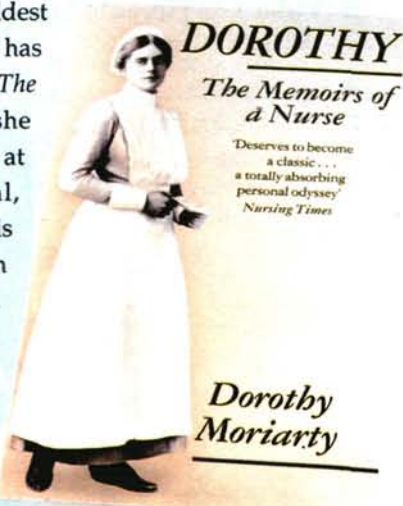
Kitty says, 'I got married when I was sixteen. All my life I've looked after my home and my children. I've got a lovely husband and I've had a happy life but I've never done anything really exciting. I've never been abroad. I've never even had a job. Now I'm famous. I've been on TV and in the newspapers! But I'm not going to rob another bank!'

102 and she's a writer!

Dorothy Moriarty is Britain's oldest writer. She is 102 years old and has just written her first book, *The Memoirs of a Nurse*. In it she describes her life as a nurse at University College Hospital, London, in the early part of this century. At that time civilian hospitals had very little money. They were dirty and nurses worked seventy hours a week and earned £8 a year. Dorothy says, 'There were cockroaches everywhere. Nobody worried about our hospitals. All the money went to the military hospitals, and the newspapers were full of stories of Florence Nightingale and her soldiers. We decided to do something. We started the Royal College of Nursing and cut our working week from seventy to forty-eight hours. This was much better.'

After the First World War Dorothy went to work in Egypt, where she met her husband, Oliver. They married in 1922, but her family life was not always happy. Oliver had a drink problem and finally died. 'I've had a difficult life, but it's been very interesting, and I've always had the love of my children and grandchildren!'

Dorothy has started planning her next book. She says that with her long life she has lots of ideas!



Comprehension check

- How old is she?
- Why is she special?
- Has she ever had a job?
- When did she get married?
- Has she ever lived abroad?
- Have there been any big problems in her life?
- Which words from the vocabulary list on page 102 were in your text?

Check your answers with your group.

Speaking

- Find someone from both of the other groups. Discuss the answers again and tell each other about your old lady.
- Read the other two texts quickly. Are the following statements about all three ladies true (✓) or false (✗)?
 - Alice Hyde is the oldest. ✗
 - They are all widows.
 - They have all been famous at some time in their lives.
 - Dorothy and Alice have both written books about their lives.
 - In the First World War military hospitals got more money than other hospitals.
 - Kitty Currie robbed the bank because she was bored with her life.
 - Charlie Chaplin wanted to marry Alice.
 - Kitty and Alice both have five children.
 - They all have plans for the future.

Discussion

- Who do you think has had ...
 - ... the happiest life?
 - ... the most difficult life?
 - ... the most interesting life?
- What do you know about the lives of your grandmothers? Tell the class about them.

VOCABULARY AND PRONUNCIATION

Odd one out

- 1 Which word is the odd one out? Why? Check the meaning of new words in your dictionary.



| | | | |
|-------------|-------------|------------|------------|
| a waitress | grandmother | nephew | widow |
| b socks | gloves | tights | stockings |
| c flew | sailed | drove | rode |
| d doctor | patient | customer | nurse |
| e telephone | photocopier | faxmachine | letter |
| f T-shirt | jeans | shorts | trousers |
| g taken | done | known | wrote |
| h face | foot | head | neck |
| i amazing | wonderful | boring | marvellous |
| j is | has | does | plays |
| k cat | kitten | puppy | lamb |

- 2 Here are some of the words in Exercise 1 in phonetics. Practise saying the words.

| | | | |
|------------|------------|-------------|-------------|
| a /glʌvz/ | d /dʒi:nz/ | g /əmeɪzɪŋ/ | j /nɜ:s/ |
| b /taɪts/ | e /fɔ:ts/ | h /wɪdəʊ/ | k /pʌpi/ |
| c /peɪfnt/ | f /fɒt/ | i /neɪfju:/ | l /traʊzəz/ |

- 3 Put one of the words from Exercise 1 into each gap.

- Have you seen my _____? My hands are really cold!
- Mary Moss has written ten novels. She _____ *Love in the Sun* two years ago.
- I have three nieces and one _____.
- John thought the film was marvellous but I thought it was _____.
- I haven't seen my grandmother recently. I think I'll send her a _____.
- Our _____ has had four kittens!
- That _____ has tried on every dress in the shop and she doesn't like any of them!
- John has just bought a guitar. He _____ it all the time.
- Ruth hates flying so she _____ to New York.
- Bobby has hurt his _____ because he kicked the ball so hard.
- When I was in London I bought a _____ with *I had tea with the Queen* on the front!

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Telephoning

- 1 **T 82a** Listen to three British telephone tones.

Which one means 'You can dial'?
Which one means 'The number is ringing'?
Which one means 'The number is engaged'?

Are the tones the same or different in your country?

- 2 Complete the three telephone conversations. Use the phrases from the box.

No, it isn't. I'll just get her.
Can I take a message?
Great! See you on Sunday at ten. Bye!
Never mind. Perhaps next time. Bye!
This is Jo speaking.
I'll ring back later.
I'm having a party on Saturday. Can you come?
Can I speak to the manager, please?

- A Hello. 276694.

B Hello. Can I speak to Jo, please?.

A _____.

B Oh! Hi, Jo. This is Pat. I'm just ringing to check that Sunday is still OK for tennis.

A Yes. That's fine.

B _____.

A Bye!



- A Hello. Chesswood 4576.

B Hello. Is that Liz?

A _____.

C Hello. Liz here.

B Hi, Liz. It's Tom. Listen! _____?

C Oh sorry, Tom. I can't. I'm going to my cousin's wedding.

B _____.

C Bye!

c

A Hello. Barclays Bank,
Chesswood.

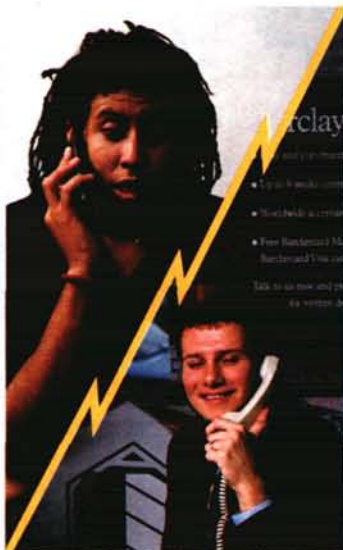
B Hello.

A Hold on. I'll put you
through ... I'm afraid Mr
Smith isn't in his office.

B Don't worry.

A All right. Goodbye.

B Goodbye.



T 82b Listen and check. In pairs, memorize and practise saying one of the conversations.

- 3 When you do not know someone's telephone number, you can ring Directory Enquiries. You ring 192 for numbers in Britain and 153 for international numbers. Here are the names and addresses of some people you want to call.

Janet Duncan
42 Collier Lane
HARROGATE
Yorkshire
Tel. _____

Ian Macdonald
21 Bridge Street
PERTH
Scotland
Tel. _____

Donna Vale
278 Tower Road
TORONTO
Canada
Tel. _____
Fax. _____

T 82c Listen to the operator and answer her questions. Find Janet Duncan's telephone number.

Operator Directory Enquiries. Which town, please?

You _____

Operator Can I have the surname, please?

You _____

Operator And the initial?

You _____

Operator What's the address?

You _____

Operator Thank you. The number you want is

Work in pairs. Take turns to be the operator. Find out the telephone and fax numbers of the other people. Your teacher will give the operators the numbers.

GRAMMAR SUMMARY

Present Perfect

Positive and negative

| | | | | |
|------|------|-------|------|----------------|
| I | | | | |
| You | have | | | |
| We | | | | |
| They | | (not) | been | to the States. |
| He | | | | |
| She | has | | | |
| It | | | | |

Question

| | | | |
|-------|------|------------------------|-------|
| | have | I you we they | been? |
| Where | has | she he it | |

Yes/No questions

Have you been to Russia?

Short answers

Yes, I have.

No, I haven't.

Present Perfect and Past Simple

We use the Present Perfect to refer to an indefinite time in the past.

He's travelled all over the world.

They've just arrived home.

We use the Past Simple to refer to a definite time in the past.

I left _____
last night.
yesterday.
in 1990.
at three o'clock.
on Monday.

Present Perfect + yet and just

I haven't done it **yet** (but I'm going to).

I have **just** done it (a short time before now).

Prepositions

She works **for** a big company.

Hamlet is a play **by** Shakespeare.

She was bored **with** life.

She wrote **about** her life as a nurse.

Don't worry **about** me.

Can I speak **to** Jo, please?

Study the Word List for this unit on page 126.

UNIT 15

Verb patterns – say and tell – Problems with officials

Thank you and goodbye

PRESENTATION (1)

Verb patterns

1 Read the thank-you letter.



2 Complete the answers to the questions. Use the words and phrases in the letter to help you.

- Why has Barbara written the letter?
Because she wants _____ Margo and Dennis for the dinner party.
- Which two questions does she ask Margo?
'Is it possible _____ me the recipe?'
'Is the curry expensive _____?'
- What does Barbara say about her next dinner party?
She says that she has decided _____ the curry.
- What does she say about Betty and Oswald?
She says that they enjoyed _____ them.
They hope _____ them again one day.
- What does she say about Betty and Oswald's house and dishwasher?
She says that they loved _____ about their house and dishwasher.





1 We use the infinitive after many adjectives.

It was **expensive to decorate** the house.
It's **easy to learn** English.

2 We use the infinitive after some verbs.

He **wants to learn** Japanese.
I'd **like to come**.
We **decided to go** to Spain.

3 We use the *-ing* form after some verbs.

I **enjoy learning** English.
He has **finished doing** his homework.
I **like swimming**.

There is a list of verb patterns on Page 127.
Unfortunately, there are no rules!

Practice

1 Grammar

- Read the letter again and underline the examples of infinitives and *-ing* forms.
- Complete the sentences with verbs from the box in the infinitive or *-ing* form. Use the list of verb patterns on Page 127 to help you.

| | | | | | |
|-------|-------|------|------|------|-------|
| drive | paint | play | fly | meet | learn |
| visit | ride | buy | rain | talk | post |

- Do you think English is difficult _____ ?
- My mother has promised _____ me a new coat for my birthday.
- How do you do? It's very nice _____ you.
- John hates _____, but I love planes.
- I need _____ to somebody about my problem.
- We stopped _____ tennis because it started _____.
- I don't like _____ big cars, I prefer _____ my bike.
- Bob's finished _____ the bathroom doors.
- Did you enjoy _____ the British Museum?
- Please don't forget _____ my letter.

PRESENTATION (2)

say and tell

T 83 Listen and complete the conversation between Barbara and a friend of hers, Alice, about the dinner party.



Alice Hi, Barbara! Did you and Raymond enjoy Margo's dinner party?

Barbara No, we _____. It _____!

Alice What about the food?

Barbara Oh, the food _____! We _____ it.

We _____ Duck and Banana Curry!

Alice Duck and what?! Ugh!

Barbara I know. I _____ duck and Ray _____ bananas!

Alice And their friends? Tell me about their friends. Were they nice?

Barbara Oh, Alice! They were friendly, but they were so _____! They talked for three hours about their _____ and their _____ and their _____! And they _____ one question about us. We _____ very little, only 'Yes?' and 'No!'

Alice Oh dear! What a terrible evening!



Notice how we use *say* and *tell*.

In the letter Barbara **said (that)** the dinner party was lovely.
She **said (that)** they had a wonderful time
She **told Alice (that)** it was awful.
She **told her (that)** they didn't enjoy it.

● Grammar questions

- How do we use *say*?
- How do we use *tell*?
- Is it correct or incorrect to use *that* after *say* and *tell*?

Practice

1 Speaking

Work in pairs. Compare Barbara's letter and her conversation with Alice. Tell your partner about some of the differences. Talk about:

- the food
- the friends
- the friends' conversation

In the letter she said that the party was wonderful, but she told Alice that it was awful.

2 Writing and speaking

Write the dialogue again, but this time about a *good* dinner party. Act your dialogue for the class. Then the class makes some sentences with *say* and *tell*.

She said the dinner party was interesting.

He told us that the food was wonderful.

3 Correcting the mistakes

Each sentence has a mistake. Find it and correct it!

- a I started smoke when I was sixteen years old.
- b We'd like you coming for dinner.
- c She said me the restaurant was next to the cinema.
- d Jeremy have never told me about his trip to Paris.
- e It's difficult for me learn Portuguese.
- f I've been to the post office for buy some stamps.
- g Do you want meeting the manager?
- h Money can't to buy love.

VOCABULARY

Multi-word verbs

- 1 Look at the dictionary extract.

take something off remove a piece of clothing: *He came in and took off his coat.*

In English many verbs can add a preposition or adverb. Sometimes the meaning of the verb is literal, as in *He took off his coat.*

Look at the second dictionary extract.

take off leave the ground and start to fly: *The aeroplane took off an hour late.*

Sometimes the meaning of the verb is idiomatic, as in *The plane took off.*

- 2 Use the multi-word verbs in the dictionary extracts in Exercise 1 and below to complete the sentences below. Put the verbs in the correct tense and form.

break down (a) go wrong and stop working: *We are late because the car broke down.*
break down (b) start to cry: *He broke down when he heard that his horse was dead.*

go out with someone have someone as a boyfriend or girlfriend: *Paula is going out with Martin.*

get on with someone work or live in a friendly way with someone: *Are you getting on with your new neighbours?*

get up stand up; get out of bed: *It's time to get up, children!*

look after take care of someone or something: *A nurse looks after sick people in a hospital.*

give something up stop doing, using, or eating something: *I'm fat. I'm going to give up sugar and potatoes!*

turn off stop something: *Turn off the light.*

turn on start something: *Turn on the television.*

- a My neighbours are away on holiday, so I _____ their cat.
- b The plane is delayed. It _____ yet.
- c Please can you _____ the radio. That music is too loud.
- d My husband wants _____ smoking, but he can't.
- e Have you heard? Rita _____ with Rick. They met at Ann's party.
- f '_____ you _____ well with your husband's parents?' 'No, I don't.'
- g The journey took ten hours because our car _____ on the motorway.
- h Mary _____ when Roger told her that he was in love with another girl.

● READING AND LISTENING

Leaving home

Pre-reading task

Work in small groups. Discuss the following questions.

- 1 In your country, when do children usually stop living with their parents and leave home?
- 2 How old are they? Why do they leave home?
- 3 What are the good things and bad things about leaving home?

Reading

Read the letter. Who has written it? When? Why?

Comprehension check

Are the following statements true (✓) or false (✗)?

- a Paula is inviting her parents to her wedding.
- b Paula's parents think that they know what is best for Paula.
- c They like Martin because he is a car salesman.
- d Paula's parents are very rich.
- e They bought a lot of things for her when she was a little girl.
- f Paula is leaving home because she doesn't love her parents.
- g Paula has a lot of brothers and sisters.
- h Paula is not going to write to her parents again.

Wednesday 10th June, 4am

Dear Mum and Dad,

I'm really sorry, but I'm leaving home. When you read this I will be far away. Don't try to find me. Martin and I are getting married next Saturday.

I know you have never liked Martin. You didn't want me to go out with him because you said that he was just a car salesman and he wasn't good enough for me. I know that you have always wanted the best for me, but Martin is best for me. I love him very much indeed.

When I was a little girl, you always gave me everything I wanted - toys, clothes, an expensive education. I know it was difficult to do this. It was a struggle because we didn't have much money, but you wanted to plan my life for me. You tried to choose my friends, my job, even my clothes. Now I am going to do what I want to do, not what you tell me to do. I want to be independent.

I love you both very much and I am your only child, so it isn't easy to leave. I hope you can forgive me and learn to love Martin. I'd love us all to get on well together.

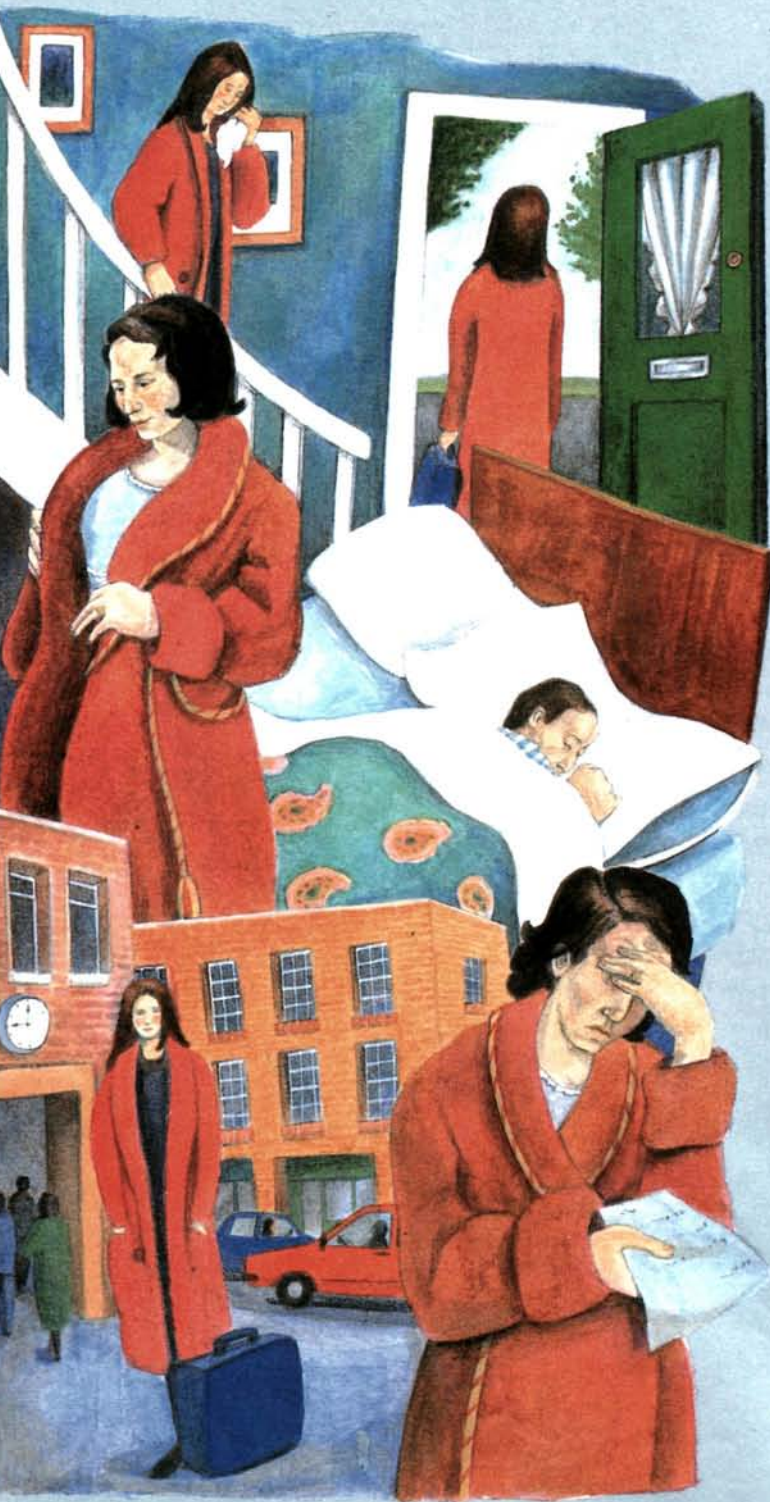
Look after each other. I promise to write again soon. Paula

Listening

You are going to read and listen to a Beatles' song called *She's Leaving Home*.

- 1 Read the words of the first verse and choose the best word in the brackets to fill in each gap. Check the meaning of new words in your dictionary.
- 2 **T 84** Listen to the first verse and the chorus and check your answers. Then do the same with the other verses.

She's Leaving HOME



Wednesday morning at five o'clock as the day _____ (begins/starts),
 Silently closing the bedroom _____ (door/window)
 Leaving the _____ (letter/note) that she hoped would say more
 She goes downstairs to the _____ (dining room/kitchen)
 _____ (Clutching/Holding) her handkerchief
 Quietly turning the backdoor key
 Stepping outside she is _____ (free/independent).

She

We gave her most of our lives.

is leaving

Sacrificed most of our lives.

home.

We gave her everything money could buy.

She's leaving home after living alone for so many years.

Father _____ (sleeps/snore) as his wife gets into her dressing gown,
 Picks up the _____ (cat/letter) that's lying there
 Standing alone at the top of the stairs
 She breaks down and _____ (cries/shouts) to her husband,
 'Daddy, our baby's _____ (gone/left).
 Why would she treat us so thoughtlessly?
 How could she do this to _____ (me/us)?'

She

We never thought of ourselves.

is leaving

Never a thought of ourselves.

home.

We struggled hard all our lives to get by.

She's leaving home after living alone for so many years.

Friday morning at nine o'clock she is far away
 Waiting to keep the appointment she _____ (had/made)
 Meeting a man from the _____ (car/motor) trade.

She

What did we do that was wrong?

is having

We didn't know it was wrong.

fun.

Fun is the one thing that money can't buy.

Something inside that was always denied for so many years.

She's leaving home. Bye bye.

● EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Problems with officials



- 1 Have you ever had problems with officials or people who work in post offices, banks, shops, airports, railway stations, or schools, for example? Tell a partner and then the others in the class about the problems.
- 2 The following sentences come from four conversations with officials. Who do you think is speaking and where do you think they are?
 - a You have to fill in a customs form when you send a parcel overseas.
 - b I bought it last week and it's too small.
 - c Have you got a passport or a driving licence?
 - d You have to give us the receipt. We can't change anything without a receipt.
 - e What's the purpose of your visit?
 - f You have to show identification with cheques over £100.
 - g Have you filled in a customs form?
 - h You have to give us an address. You can't enter the country without an address!



Have/has to expresses strong obligation.

Policemen **have to** wear uniforms.

- 3 Read the conversations and put the letter of the correct sentence into each gap.

- 1 A Can I help you?
B Yes. Can I change this jumper please? _____
A Have you got the receipt?
B No. I'm sorry, I've lost it.
A Oh dear! _____
B But ... !

- 2 A Can I send this parcel to Greece, please?
B Yes, of course. That's £3.50. Thank you. _____
A Customs form? What customs form?
B _____
A Can you give me a form then, please?
B No, I don't have any. They're over there on that table.
A Sorry? Where?
B Over there. They're the green forms.

- 3 A That's £104.50 altogether. How do you want to pay?
B Can I pay by cheque?
A Yes, but have you got any identification? _____
B Oh dear! Let me see. I've got a photo of me and my aunt at the seaside.
A No, no, no. _____
B No, I haven't.
A Then I'm afraid we can't take your cheque.
B But ... !

- 4 A _____
B Oh, I'm going to study English and have a holiday.
A And how long are you staying?
B For a month.
A And where are you going to stay? What's your address?
B I'm not sure. The language school is going to find me somewhere to stay.
A Mmm! _____
B But ... !

T 85 Listen and check.

- 4 Work in pairs. Think of a problem you have had with officials. Act it for the class.

GRAMMAR SUMMARY

Verb patterns

There are different verb patterns when one verb follows another verb.

Verb + infinitive

| | | |
|---------------|---------|-----------------|
| I want | to go | home. |
| We'd like | to have | a holiday. |
| We've decided | to get | married! |
| I hope | to see | you again soon. |

Verb + -ing

| | |
|-----------------------|----------|
| He enjoys/loves/likes | sailing. |
| It's stopped/started | raining. |

There is a list of verb patterns on page 127.

Adjective + infinitive

| | | |
|----------------|---------------|-------------------|
| It was nice | to meet | you. |
| It's easy | to make | mistakes. |
| It's difficult | to understand | what he's saying. |

say and tell

| | | |
|-----|-------------|------------------------|
| She | said (that) | she enjoyed the party. |
| He | | I was wrong. |

| | | | | |
|-----|------|------|--------|-------------------------|
| I | told | them | (that) | their English was good. |
| She | | me | | she wanted to go home. |

NOT ~~She said me~~ she enjoyed the party.
~~He told~~ their English was good.

Prepositions

I want to talk to you **about** something.

Tell me **about** their friends.

I have a problem **with** people in the post office.

Study the Word List for this unit on page 126.

STOP AND CHECK

UNITS 13-15

1 Correcting the mistakes

There is a mistake in each sentence. Find it and correct it!

Example

We ~~was~~ in Paris last year. *We were in Paris last year.*

- a Why you want to learn Portuguese?
- b She hasn't never been to Madrid.
- c I've wrote to her three times and she hasn't answered yet.
- d We'd like invite you to dinner at our house.
- e How many times you been to Greece?
- f I have just finished do my homework.
- g We've met two years ago in New York.
- h Say me when you want to stop for lunch.
- i What sort books do you like reading?
- j Did you ever been to Ireland?

10

2 Questions and tenses

Ask questions about the statements.

Example

John went to New York. *When did he go?*

- | | |
|------------------------------|------------------------|
| a Anna's tired. | Why _____? |
| b I don't go to work by car. | How _____ you _____? |
| c This pen isn't mine. | Whose _____? |
| d I met a famous actress. | Who _____ you _____? |
| e Sarah's bought a new car. | What sort _____? |
| f We saw Bill yesterday. | Where _____ you _____? |
| g Sue's watching television. | What _____? |
| h They're going on holiday. | Where _____? |
| i Peter's left the party. | Why _____? |
| j She drank a lot of wine. | How much _____? |

20

3 Past Simple and Present Perfect

Underline the correct tense, the Past Simple or the Present Perfect.

Example

I saw/have seen Jill yesterday.

- a I met/have met Anna ten years ago.
- b My sister did never go/has never been to France.
- c I'm sorry. I didn't finish/haven't finished my work yet.
- d I ate/have eaten a lot of ice-cream when I was a child.
- e They climbed/have climbed Everest in 1953.

5

4 Adverb or adjective?

Underline the correct form.

Example

I'm driving careful/carefully because it is raining.

- a Our village is always very quiet/quietly. Nothing happens.
- b Please speak more slow/slowly. I can't understand you.
- c She's a very good/well driver.
- d He doesn't drive very good/well.
- e My grandparents are very strong and healthy/healthily for their age.

5

5 Infinitive or -ing?

Put the verb in brackets in the correct form, infinitive or -ing.

Example

I'd like to go (go) to Greece next year.

- a Both my husband and I enjoy _____ (cook) very much.
- b Our new neighbours are difficult _____ (get) on with.
- c We've decided _____ (move) to the countryside.
- d Have you finished _____ (paint) the kitchen yet?
- e My uncle needs _____ (see) a doctor about his leg.

10

6 Word order

Put the words into the correct order.

Example

letter you yet have the written?

Have you written the letter yet?

a many got you how cousins have?

b Rome they just have in arrived

c smoking Jane up gave ago years three

d quickly road along man the walked the

e by play a have Shakespeare seen ever you?

f has Mary party decided to to the go?

g says English learn easy is teacher my that to

h meeting did parents Bob's you enjoy?

i people going many invite party how are to to your you?

j us they their car told about new

10

7 Auxiliaries

1 Put one of the following auxiliary verbs into the gaps.

am/is/are do/does/did have/has

Example

I am listening to music.

a Look at those children! They _____ smoking cigarettes!

b _____ your daughter speak French well?

c _____ you learn German when you were at school?

d _____ Ben ever been to India?

e We _____ never played volleyball.

f I _____ going to give up smoking soon.

g _____ Mark and Jane live near you?

h _____ John going to phone you tomorrow?

i When _____ you learn to drive? A long time ago?

j _____ you written to thank Sue and Bill yet?

10

8 Vocabulary – word groups

Put the following words into the correct columns.

detective story jumbo jet engaged title head
horror story neck platform nose journey passenger
hands helicopter dial take off station face ringing
timetable characters train mouth dictionary arrival
departure operator biography call return ticket foot

| Travel | Parts of the body | Telephoning | Books |
|--------|-------------------|-------------|-------|
| | | | |

9 Prepositions

Put a preposition from the box into each gap.

about in out of by on for to from

a I'm reading a book _____ the history of France.

b *Oliver Twist* is a book _____ Charles Dickens.

c Is it far _____ your house to the station?

d Is Mexico City the biggest city _____ the world?

e Jane's worried _____ her exam.

f What's _____ television tonight?

g Are you interested _____ politics?

h She works _____ a big company.

i Can I speak _____ you for a moment?

j He drove _____ the garage and down the street.

20

10

Total 100

TRANSLATE

Translate the sentences into your language. Translate the *ideas*, not word by word.

1 Tim drives carefully. Tim's a careful driver.

2 Have you ever been to China? I went to China last year.

3 He hasn't finished his homework yet.

4 I've just finished my homework.

5 I want to go home.

6 I enjoy reading.

Tapescript section

UNIT 1

Tapescript 1a

- A Hello. My name's Jenny. What's your name?
 B Anna.
 A Where are you from, Anna?
 B I'm from New York.

Tapescript 1b

- A Hello. My name's Thomas. What's your name?
 B Johann.
 A Where are you from, Johann?
 B I'm from Berlin. Where are you from?
 A I'm from Oxford.

Tapescript 2

My name's Mayumi Kimura, and I'm a student. I'm 19 years old. I'm not married. I have two brothers and a sister. I live in a flat in Osaka, Japan. I want to learn English because it's an international language.

Tapescript 3

| | | |
|---------|--------|---------|
| France | Spain | Greece |
| England | Egypt | Russia |
| Brazil | Japan | |
| Germany | Mexico | Hungary |
| | | Italy |

Tapescript 4

- 1 He's from Spain.
 2 I'm sixteen.
 3 Her name's Pat.
 4 They're from Britain.
 5 Where's she from?
 6 He's a teacher in France.

Tapescript 5

- a A Hello, Mary. How are you?
 B Fine, thank you. And you?
 A I'm OK, thanks.
 b A Hi, Dave. How are you?
 B Not bad, thanks. And you?
 A Very well. How are the children?
 B They're fine.
 c A Goodbye, Chris.
 B Goodbye, Anne. Have a nice evening.
 A Thanks, Chris. See you tomorrow.

Tapescript 6

a stamp a bag a map a key
 an apple a postcard a ticket a notebook
 an orange a letter a suitcase a camera
 a dictionary an envelope a newspaper
 a magazine

Tapescript 7a

a h j k
 b c d e g p t v
 f l m n s x z
 i y
 o
 q u w
 r

Tapescript 7b

The alphabet song

a b c d e f g h i j k l
 m n o p
 l m n o p q r s t
 l m n o p q r s t
 u v w x y z

That is the English alphabet.

Tapescript 7c

name N - A - M - E
 sister S - I - S - T - E - R
 flat F - L - A - T
 student S - T - U - D - E - N - T
 doctor D - O - C - T - O - R
 house H - O - U - S - E
 letter L - E - double T - E - R
 married M - A - double R - I - E - D
 apple A - double P - L - E
 job J - O - B

Tapescript 7d

- A How do you spell your first name?
 B J - A - M - E - S.
 A How do you spell your surname?
 B H - A - double R - I - S - O - N.
 A James Harrison.
 B That's right.

UNIT 2

Tapescript 8

Numbers

5 20 16 32 50 12

Phone numbers

791463 859 6 double 2 503 971
 010 double 3 1 46 58 93 94.

Tapescript 9

- A What's her surname? A What's her address?
 B Hopkins. B 35, North Street, Bristol.
 A What's her first name? A What's her phone number?
 B Mary. B 0272 478 2209.
 A Where's she from? A How old is she?
 B England. B Twenty-three.
 A What's her job? A Is she married?
 B She's a journalist. B No, she isn't.

Tapescript 10

This is a photo of Martin, his wife, and his children. His wife's name is Jennifer. She's a dentist. His daughter's name is Alison. She's twenty-three and she's a hairdresser. His son's name is Andy. He's nineteen and he's a student. Alison's boyfriend is a travel agent. His name is Joe.

Tapescript 11

- a It's big. i It's easy.
 b It's small. j It's difficult.
 c She's old. k They're old.
 d She's young. l They're new.
 e They're expensive. m They're hot.
 f They're cheap. n They're cold.
 g It's horrible. o It's right.
 h It's lovely. p It's wrong.

Tapescript 12a

Paola's letter to David
 (see page 16)

Tapescript 12b

P = Paola K = Kurt

- 1 P Hello. My name's Paola.
 K Hello, Paola. I'm Kurt.
 P Where are you from?
 K I'm from Switzerland. And you? Where are you from?
 P I'm from Rome.
 K Ah! I'm from Zurich.
 P Zurich is very beautiful.
 K Yes, it is.

T = ticket seller

- 2 P A ticket to Green Park, please.
 T Two pounds fifty.
 P One ... two ... and fifty p.
 T Thank you. Here's your ticket.
 P Thanks.

B = Peter Briscall C = class

- 3 B Good morning!
 C Good morning!
 Good morning, Peter!
 Hello!
 B How are you today?
 C Fine.
 OK.
 B How are you, Paola?
 P I'm fine thank you, Peter. And you?
 B Very well! Now, the lesson today is ...

C = assistant in café K = Kurt

- 4 C Yes?
 P A coffee, please.
 C Black or white?
 P Sorry?
 C Black or white? Milk?
 P Ah! Black, please. No milk.
 C Sixty p, please.
 P Thanks.
 P Urgh!! It's horrible!
 K English coffee is very bad!

C = Catherine T = Thomas

- 5 C Is your teacher good, Paola?
 P Pardon?
 C Your teacher. At the school of English.
 P Ah! Yes! Peter.
 C Is he OK?
 P Yes. He's very nice. He's funny.
 T What's your dad's job, Paola?
 P Pardon? I ...
 T Your dad. What's his job?
 P My dad ...?
 C Say father, Thomas, not dad.
 T Ah, OK. What's your father's job, Paola?
 P Now I understand. My father's job, yes.
 Um ... He's a doctor, yes.
 T Ah, right!

Tapescript 13a

sandwiches
 a ham sandwich £1.50
 a cheese sandwich £1.30
 a tuna sandwich £1.70
 a chicken sandwich £2.00
 a piece of pizza 90p
 a hamburger £2.50
 an ice-cream 80p
 a cup of tea
 a cup of coffee

a Coke
an orange juice
a mineral water

- A How much is a cup of tea?
B 50p.
A How much is a cup of coffee?
B 70p.
A How much is a Coke?
B 60p.
A How much is an orange juice?
B 60p.
A How much is a mineral water?
B 80p.

Tapescript 13b

- a A Hello.
B Hello. Can I have a ham sandwich, please?
A Here you are. Anything else?
B No, thanks.
A One pound fifty, please.
B Thanks.
A Thank you.
- b A Hi.
B Hello. Can I have a cheese sandwich, please?
A Anything to drink?
B Yes. A cup of tea, please.
A OK. Here you are.
B How much is that?
A One pound eighty, please.
B Thanks.
- c A Good morning.
B Morning.
A Can I have a hamburger and a cup of coffee, please?
B OK. Here you are.
A Thanks. How much is that?
B Three pounds twenty.
A One, two, three pounds ... twenty p.
B Thanks.
A Thank you.

Tapescript 16a

- Georges comes from Paris.
- Georges lives in London.
- He works in the centre of Paris.
- In his free time he plays tennis.
- Keiko comes from China.
- She lives in Washington.
- She speaks French and German.
- She's married to an American.
- Mark comes from England.
- He works in Liverpool.
- He speaks Italian.
- In his free time he goes walking.

Tapescript 16b

- She likes her job.
- She loves walking.
- She's married.
- Does he have three children?
- Where does he go?
- She watches the television.

Tapescript 17

- a A Good morning, sir. Can I see your ticket?
B Yes, of course. Here you are.
A Thank you. Maidstone next stop.
B Thank you.
- b A Good morning, boys and girls.
B Good morning, Mr Garret.
A Can I have your homework, please?
B It's on your desk, Mr Garret.
A Thank you.
- c A Goodbye, Frank. Have a good journey!
B Thank you very much.
A See you next Monday.
B Yes, of course. Goodbye!
- d A Excuse me. Is this seat free?
B Yes, it is.
A Thank you. It's cold this evening.
B It certainly is. And the sea's very black!
- e A Hello darling! Are you tired?
B Yes, I am. And cold.
A Sit down and have a glass of wine.
B Mmmm! Thank you. I'm hungry, too.

Tapescript 18a

It's five o'clock. It's eight o'clock. It's half past five. It's half past eleven.
It's quarter past five. It's quarter past two. It's quarter to six. It's quarter to nine.
It's five past five. It's ten past five. It's twenty past five. It's twenty-five past five.
It's twenty-five to six. It's twenty to six. It's ten to six. It's five to six.

Tapescript 18b

- A Excuse me. Can you tell me the time, please?
B Yes, of course. It's six o'clock.
A Thanks.
- A Excuse me. Can you tell me the time, please?
B I'm sorry. I don't know. I don't have a watch.

UNIT 4

Tapescript 19a

On Fridays I come home from the BBC at about 2.00 in the afternoon and I just relax. On Friday evenings I don't go out, but sometimes a friend

comes for dinner. He or she brings the wine and I cook the meal. I love cooking! We listen to music or we just chat.

On Saturday mornings I get up at 9.00 and I go shopping. Then in the evenings I sometimes go to the theatre or the opera with a friend – I love opera! Then we eat in my favourite Chinese restaurant. On Sunday... Oh, on Sunday mornings I stay in bed late, I don't get up until 11.00! Sometimes in the afternoon I visit my sister. She lives in the country and has two children. I like playing with my niece and nephew, but I leave early because I go to bed at 8.00 on Sunday evenings!

Tapescript 19b

- A Do you go out on Friday afternoons?
B No, I don't.
A What do you do?
B I just relax.
A Do you stay at home on Friday evenings?
B Yes, I do.
A What do you do?
B I cook dinner for friends.

Tapescript 20

- What does he do on Sundays?
- I stay at home on Thursday evenings.
- He lives here.
- I eat a lot.
- Where do you go on Saturday evenings?
- She likes cars.

Tapescript 21a

Mr and Mrs Forrester have a son and a daughter. The son lives at home, and the daughter is a student at university. Mr Forrester is a journalist. He works for *The Times*. He writes articles about restaurants. 'I love food!' he says.

Tapescript 21b

'Every spring the children go skiing, so my wife and I go to Paris on holiday. We stay in a hotel near the River Seine. We have breakfast in the hotel, but we have lunch in a restaurant. French food is delicious! We walk a lot, but sometimes we go by taxi. After four days we don't want to go home and go back to work.'

Tapescript 22a

Al Wheeler
Manuela da Silva
Toshi Suzuki
(see page 29)

Tapescript 22b

- M = Manuela J = Jane F = Manuela's friends P = Portuguese man**
- 1 M Hello, everybody! This is my friend Jane, from England.
F Hi!
Hello!
Hello, Jane!
J Hello. Pleased to meet you.
M Sit down here, Jane.
J Thanks.
P Do you like this music, Jane?
J Mm. Is it American?
P No, it's Brazilian jazz!
M Come and have a drink, Jane ...
- T = Toshi J = Ann Jones**
- 2 T Mrs Jones! How do you do?
J How do you do?

UNIT 3

Tapescript 14

Sister Mary
Hans Huser
(see page 19)

Tapescript 15a

- A Where does Sister Mary come from?
B Ireland.
A What does she do?
B She's a teacher.
A Does she speak French?
B Yes, she does.
A Does she speak German?
B No, she doesn't.

Tapescript 15b

- a A Where does Hans come from?
B Switzerland.
b A What does he do?
B He's a ski-instructor.
c A Does he speak French and German?
B Yes, he does.
d A Does he speak Spanish?
B No, he doesn't.

- T Please come in. You're from our office in London, aren't you?
 J Yes, that's right.
 T Welcome to Tokyo! Do you like our headquarters here?
 J Yes. It's very big. How many people work here?
 T About six thousand people. Do you want to see our offices? ...

A = Al M = Mick (Scottish)

- 3 A What do you want to do today, Mick?
 M Ooh, I don't know. What do you ...
 A Well, do you like fishing?
 M Yes. I sometimes go fishing in a river near my house in Scotland.
 A Well, here it's different. This is a very big country. I go fishing on a lake. It's a hundred kilometres long!
 M A hundred kilometres!
 A Yeah! There are fish this big! Are you interested? Do you want to go?
 M OK!
 A Right. You want a fishing line ...

Tapescript 23

- a A Excuse me!
 B Yes?
 A Do you have a light?
 B I'm sorry. I don't smoke.
 A That's OK.
 b A I'm sorry I'm late. The traffic is bad today.
 B Don't worry. Come and sit down. We're on page 25.
 c A Can I open the window? It's very hot in here.
 B Really? I'm quite cold.
 A OK. It doesn't matter.
 d A Excuse me!
 H Can I help you?
 G Can I have a film for my camera?
 H How many exposures?
 G Pardon?
 H How many exposures?
 G What does *exposures* mean?
 H How many pictures? 24? 36?
 G Ah! Now I understand! 36, please.

UNIT 5

Tapescript 24

- A Is there a stereo? A Are there any books?
 B Yes, there is. B Yes, there are.
 A Is there a clock? A Are there any magazines?
 B No, there isn't. B No, there aren't.

Tapescript 25

Picture A

There are four pictures on the walls and a mirror. There are three people in the room, a man, a woman, and a girl. There's a lovely fire and the cat is in front of the fire, sleeping. There's a lamp near the window, and a clock on the wall near the mirror. There's a photo on the television and there are some newspapers on the floor near the television. There's a glass of beer on the table in front of the man. The television isn't on.

Picture B

There are two people in the room. There's a man on the sofa and a woman next to him. The cat's in front of the fire. There are four pictures on the walls.

There are two plants, one on the left of the fire and one on the right. On the table in front of the man there are some cups and some books and on the table next to the sofa there is a telephone.

Tapescript 26

It's a modern kitchen, nice and clean with a lot of cupboards. There's a washing machine, a fridge and a cooker, but there isn't a dishwasher. There are some lovely pictures on the walls, but there aren't any photographs. There's a radio near the cooker. There are some flowers, but there aren't any plants. On the table there are some apples and oranges. Ah! And there are some cups and plates next to the sink.

Tapescript 27

What's in my bag? Well, there's a newspaper – a French newspaper – and there's my dictionary. I have some pens, three, I think. There's a photo of my wife and a photo of my children. I have my notebook for vocabulary, of course. I write words in that every day. I have some keys, and that's all! I don't have any stamps and I don't have a bus ticket. Oh, and I have a letter, from my bank manager. He wants my money!

Tapescript 28

Anne-Marie

I live in a house in the country in Provence in the south of France. It's an old farmhouse, about five hundred years old, with very thick walls, so it's warm in winter and cool in summer, but it's difficult to look after because it's so old. There are three bedrooms, two quite big and one small, and they have wonderful views over the countryside. I have a garden where I grow flowers and vegetables, I live with my animals! I have two dogs and eight cats.

Harry

Where I live things are big. I live in Texas – that's the second biggest state in the USA – and I live with my wife and our four children. We have ten cars because we all like driving. Sometimes we drive 150 kilometres to go to a restaurant! Our house is three years old, and it's kind of big. There are fourteen or fifteen bedrooms, I don't know exactly, and outside there are two swimming pools and ... a golf course ... and some grass for my plane to land on.

Dave and Maggie

Maggie We have a small house in an area of Dublin called Donnybrook. It's quite a small house. There's a living room and a kitchen downstairs, and then two small bedrooms upstairs, but it's big enough for us. There's my husband and me, and our son, Thomas.

Dave The houses around here are about a hundred years old and people are very friendly. People don't want to move away, they want to live near their family, so my parents are very close...

Maggie ... and my mother lives next door! We have a small garden where Thomas plays, and I go out and have a chat with my mother!

Thanos

I live in a flat on the fourth floor. I live alone. There's a kitchen where I cook and eat, a living room with a balcony, and two small bedrooms. I live in Athina – you say Athens in English – but not in the centre of town because there are too many cars. It's a nice area. The shops aren't too far, and the flat is comfortable. It's about five years old, which I like. I don't like old buildings.

Tapescript 29

- a A Excuse me! Is there a chemist's near here?
 B Yes. It's over there.
 A Thanks.
 b A Excuse me! Is there a sports club near here?
 B Yes. It's in Queen Street. Take the second street on the right.
 A Thanks.
 c A Excuse me! Is there a newsagent's near here?
 B Yes. There's one in Church Street next to the bank and there's one in Park Lane opposite the swimming pool.
 A Is that one far?
 B No. Just two minutes, that's all.
 d A Is there a cinema near here?
 B Take the first left, and it's on the left, opposite the flower shop.
 A Thanks a lot.

UNIT 6

Tapescript 30a

- a A Can you speak Japanese?
 B No, I can't.
 b I can't hear you. The line's bad.
 c A Can you use a word processor?
 B Yes, I can.
 d I can't spell your name.
 e Cats can see in the dark.
 f She can type fifty words a minute.

Tapescript 30b

- a I can type, but I can't spell.
 b He can sing and he can dance.
 c A Can you cook?
 B Yes, I can.
 d They can ski, but they can't swim.
 e We can read and we can write.
 f A Can she drive?
 B No, she can't.

Tapescript 31

Sarah

Well, there are a lot of things I can't do! I can't draw and I can't drive a car, but I want to have lessons. I can ... I can type and I can use a word processor, because I have one at work and I use it all the time. What about sports? Mm. Well, I certainly can't ski, but I'm quite good at tennis, yes, I can play tennis. Well, I usually win when I play with my friends. And I can swim, of course. And I can cook. I think I'm a very good, well, no, just good ... a good cook! Now, then ... languages. I can speak French and German. I don't know any Italian at all, and I know about five words in Spanish – *adios, mañana, paella* – no, I can't speak Spanish! And I can't play any musical instruments, not the piano, the guitar, or anything.

Tapescript 32

- A What day was it yesterday?
 B It was Thursday.
 A Where were you yesterday?
 B I was at school.
 A Were you at home yesterday?
 B Yes, I was.
 A The restaurant was cheap. But the food wasn't very good.

- A Could you play the piano when you were six?
B No, I couldn't.

Tapescript 33

- Sue** Were you at Eve's party last Saturday?
Bill Yes, I was.
Sue Was it good?
Bill Well, it was OK.
Sue Were there many people?
Bill Yes, there were.
Sue Was Tom there?
Bill No, he wasn't. And where were you?
Sue Oh ... I couldn't go because I was at Adam's party! It was brilliant!

Tapescript 34a

This is flight information for today, 24 June. British Airways flight BA 516 to Geneva at gate 14, last call. Flight BA 516 to Geneva, last call, gate 14. Scandinavian Airlines flight SK 832 to Frankfurt at gate 7, last call. Flight SK 832 to Frankfurt, last call, gate 7. Air France flight AF 472 to Amsterdam is delayed thirty minutes. Flight AF 472 to Amsterdam, delayed thirty minutes. Lufthansa flight LH 309 to Miami, now boarding at gate 32. Flight LH 309 to Miami now boarding at gate 32. Virgin flight VS 876 to New York, now boarding at gate 20. Flight VS 876, now boarding at gate 20. Passengers are reminded to keep their luggage with them at all times. Thank you.

Tapescript 34b

At the airport
(see page 45)

Tapescript 34c

- a Was it Gate 4 or 14?
b Can I see your passport, please?
c Smoking or non-smoking?
d Can I have your tray please, madam?
e Excuse me. I think that's my suitcase.
f Welcome to England! Was your flight good?

UNIT 7

Tapescript 35a

Text B

Ellen's father died in the war in 1915 and her mother died a year later. Ellen was twelve years old. Immediately she started work as a housemaid with a rich family in London.

Tapescript 35b

Text C

She worked from 5.30 in the morning until 9.00 at night. She cleaned all the rooms in the house before breakfast. She earned £25 a year. In 1921 she moved to another family. She liked her new job because she looked after the children. There were five children, four sons and one daughter. She loved them, especially the baby, Robert. She stayed with that family for twenty years. Ellen never married. She just looked after other people's children until she retired when she was seventy years old.

Tapescript 36a

- a I was only twelve years old when my mother died and I started work.
b I was always tired in my first job because I

worked very long hours.

- c I started work at 5.30 in the morning and I finished at 9.00 in the evening.
d Now I live in a village, but in 1920 I lived in London.
e Now I look after my five cats. In the 1920s I looked after five children.
f I loved all the children, but I loved Robert especially.
g Robert's over seventy now and I still see him. He visited me just last month.

Tapescript 36b

| | | | | |
|----------|--------|---------|---------|-------|
| worked | lived | died | started | loved |
| finished | looked | visited | cleaned | liked |
| stayed | moved | | | |

Tapescript 37

Where was she born?
When did she die?
When did her father die?
When did she marry Prince Albert?
Where did they live?
How many children did they have?

Tapescript 38

| | | | |
|--------|-------|---------|------|
| had | came | worked | went |
| left | hated | got | gave |
| became | wrote | changed | won |
| lost | found | bought | sold |

Tapescript 39

What can I remember? Well, I left school in 1982. I was unemployed for two years, but then I found a job in an office. I sold computer software to businesses. Suddenly computers were everywhere! Banks, hotels, hospitals, schools, homes. My Mum and Dad bought a video recorder in 1985, and my little brother got a computer video game for his birthday in 1986. Near the end of the 1980s things got worse and in 1990 I lost my job. Now, sport. Well, in 1980 the United States didn't go to the Olympics in Moscow, and in 1984 the USSR didn't go to the Olympics in Los Angeles, but they both went to Seoul in 1988. Argentina won the World Cup in 1986, and Germany won it in 1990. What about politics? Well, Mrs Thatcher was our Prime Minister for the whole of the 1980s. Reagan became the US president in 1981. Gorbachev gave the world *glasnost* and *perestroika*, and the Berlin Wall came down in 1989. Then all sorts of things changed.

Tapescript 40a

| | | | |
|----------|----------|---------|------------|
| a walk | d writer | g work | j half |
| b listen | e autumn | h short | k foreign |
| c know | f farm | i high | l daughter |

Tapescript 40b

| | |
|----------|-------------|
| a talk | f white |
| b born | g knife |
| c bought | h wrong |
| d world | i cupboard |
| e answer | j Christmas |

Tapescript 41a

- a A Ugh! Work again! I hate Mondays!
B Me too. Did you have a nice weekend?
A Yes. It was wonderful.

- b Happy birthday to you.
Happy birthday to you.
Happy birthday, dear Katie.
Happy birthday to you.
c A How many Easter eggs did you get?
B Six. What about you?
A Five. I had them all on Easter morning before lunch.
B Did you?
A And then I was sick!
B Ugh!
d A Congratulations!
B Oh ... thank you very much.
A When's the happy day?
B Pardon?
A Your wedding day. When is it?
B Oh! We're not sure yet. Some time in June, probably.
e A Hello! Merry Christmas, everyone!
B Merry Christmas! Come in, come in. It's so cold outside.
f A Wonderful! It's Friday!
B Yes. Have a nice weekend!
A Same to you.

Tapescript 41b

- a Did you have a nice weekend?
b Happy birthday!
c Merry Christmas!
d Have a nice weekend!
e Congratulations!

UNIT 8

Tapescript 42

The hamburger

An American chef from Connecticut, Louis Lassen, made and sold the first hamburgers in 1895. He called them hamburgers because sailors from Hamburg in Germany gave him the recipe. Students from Yale University and businessmen loved them and bought them. Kenneth Lassen, Louis' grandson still sells hamburgers in Connecticut.

Television

A Scotsman, John Logie Baird, transmitted the first television picture on 25 October, 1925. The first person on television was a boy who worked in the office next to Baird's workroom in London. In 1927 Baird sent pictures from London to Glasgow. In 1928 he sent pictures to New York and also produced the first colour TV pictures.

The ball-point pen

A Hungarian, Laszlo Biro, made the first ball-point pen in 1938. In 1944 the British Army bought thirty thousand because soldiers could write with them outside in the rain. At the end of the war 'Biro's' quickly became very popular all over the world. In 1948 a shop in New York sold ten thousand on one day.

Tapescript 43

- A Did you know that Marco Polo brought spaghetti back from China?
B Really? He didn't! That's incredible!
A Well, it's true!
A Did you know that Napoleon was afraid of cats?
B He wasn't! I don't believe it!
A Well, it's true!

Tapescript 44

On 1 June 1992 a French burglar broke into a house in Paris. He went into the living room and stole two pictures. Then he went into the kitchen. He opened the fridge and saw some cheese. He was hungry, so he ate all the cheese. Next he saw two bottles of champagne. He was very thirsty, so he drank both bottles. Then he felt sleepy. He went upstairs for a rest, but he was tired and he fell asleep. When he woke up the next morning, there were four policemen around the bed.

Tapescript 45

Wendy Mint

Well, it was five years ago. A Sunday evening five years ago. I was in the bath and the radio was on. Er ... I always listen to pop music in the bath. Suddenly I heard this voice, the disc jockey's voice. It was beautiful, really beautiful. Warm and friendly. I thought, 'Oh! What a lovely voice!' I think I fell in love then, with his voice. Well, I listened to the end of the programme and I heard his name, Oliver Mint. I loved the name, too.

Well, er ... usually I'm quite shy, but this time I wasn't. I went to the telephone and I rang the radio station. I couldn't believe it! Suddenly there was his voice on the telephone! And we talked and talked, for about half an hour. And he said, 'Where do you live?' so I told him, and then he said, 'Can we meet?' And I said 'Yes, please!' So we met in an Italian restaurant the next evening. I was so nervous, but it was wonderful! We got married a month later and now we have a lovely baby boy. He's nearly two!

Trevor Richards

Well, I have a baker's shop. I make all the bread and cakes for it. And one day ... it was a very hot day in summer, er ... the summer of 1976, and it was lunchtime and er ... this beautiful girl came into the shop. She was with some friends and I could hear that they weren't English, but they spoke English very well and er ... they all bought sandwiches and went to the park. Well, I couldn't forget her. The way she smiled, the way she laughed, her blue, blue eyes. I waited and watched every lunchtime but she didn't come back into the shop.

Then suddenly, there she was again, and so I said, 'Hello again. You're still in England, then?' And she said, 'Yes. But this is my last day. I go back to Sweden tomorrow.' And she smiled. Now, usually I'm shy, but I took a small pink cake and I wrote *I love you* on it. And when she asked for a chicken sandwich, I looked into the blue, blue eyes and I gave her the cake! She laughed and said, 'I didn't know English men were so romantic!' Well, after that she went back to Sweden, but we wrote letters and in 1978 we got married. Now we work together in the shop and we have three children.

Tapescript 46a

first second third fourth fifth
sixth tenth twelfth thirteenth
sixteenth seventeenth twentieth
twenty-first thirtieth thirty-first

Tapescript 46b

the first of April April the first
the second of March March the second
the seventeenth of September September the
seventeenth
the nineteenth of November November the
nineteenth

the twenty-third of June June the twenty-third
the fifteenth of July, nineteen sixty-seven
the twenty-ninth of February, nineteen seventy-six
the nineteenth of December, nineteen eighty-three
the third of October, nineteen seventy
the thirty-first of May, nineteen ninety-three

Tapescript 46c

- 1 The fourth of January
- 2 May the seventh, nineteen twenty-two
- 3 The thirtieth of August, nineteen sixty-five
- 4 A It was Friday. I know it was Friday!
B No, it wasn't. It was Saturday!
A No. I remember. It was Friday the thirteenth. The thirteenth of October!
- 5 A Oh no! I forgot your birthday.
B It doesn't matter, really.
A It was last Sunday, the second. June the second. Oh I am sorry!
- 6 A Hey! Did you know this?
Shakespeare was born and died on the same day!
B That's not possible!
A Yes, it is. He was born on April the twenty-third, fifteen sixty-four and he died on April the twenty-third, sixteen sixteen!

UNIT 9

Tapescript 47

- A I don't like tea.
B Oh, I do. Well, sometimes. But coffee's horrible.
A Yeah.
B I don't like wine, either.
- A My dad does, and my mum. They have it every day.
B I quite like apple juice, but it can be really sweet and yuk.
- A I love beer! When my dad has some, I always take some.
B Milk, I like milk.
A Me, too, especially on cereal.
B Water's just water. It's boring.
- A I like bread, but only if there's nothing else.
B Mmm! I love bread and cheese.
- A I hate cheese. But I adore ice-cream. Mmm! Any ice-cream! All ice-cream! Yummy!
B So do I. And chocolate. Lovely chocolate!
A Mmm, chocolate! I quite like rice, but not a lot.
B Me, too. But I like fruit.
- A Yeah, I like fruit, especially strawberries and apples.
B Oranges are boring, but bananas are OK.
A I like bananas with a bit of milk and sugar.
B Oh, yuk! That's disgusting!
- A No, it isn't. ... I don't like eggs at all.
B What about the rest? Biscuits, yes. Sandwiches, no. Tomatoes, yuk.
- BOTH Hamburgers, YES!

Tapescript 48

- a A I'm thirsty.
B Would you like some tea?
A No, thanks.
B Would you like some apple juice?
B Oh, yes, please!
- b A I'm hungry. Is there anything to eat?
B Would you like a biscuit?
A No, thanks. I'd like a sandwich.
B Cheese? Ham?
A Cheese and ham, please!

Tapescript 49a

- 1 Good afternoon. Can I help you?
- 2 Who's your favourite writer?
- 3 What would you like for Christmas?
- 4 Do you like animals?
- 5 Here's the wine list, sir.
- 6 Have some cream with your strawberries!

Tapescript 49b

- 1 A Good afternoon. Can I help you?
B Yes. I'd like some fruit, please.
- 2 A Who's your favourite writer?
B I like books by John le Carré.
- 3 A What would you like for Christmas?
B I'd like a new bike.
- 4 A Do you like animals?
B I like cats, but I don't like dogs.
- 5 A Here's the wine list, sir.
B We'd like a bottle of French red wine.
- 6 A Have some cream with your strawberries!
B No, thanks. I don't like cream.

Tapescript 50

- A Morning.
B Good morning.
- A How can I help you?
B I'd like some orange juice, please.
- A Er ... sorry. There's apple juice, but no orange juice.
B Oh! What's that? Isn't that orange juice?
A Oh, yes. So it is! My eyes! There you are.
- B Thank you. And some potatoes, please.
A A bag like this?
B Yes, fine. Now, some milk.
- A Sorry. I sold the last bottle just two minutes ago.
- B Oh, dear! What about some coffee?
A Yes. There you are.
- B Thanks. Orange juice, potatoes, milk, coffee ... A kilo of apples, please.
- A I don't sell apples.
- B Really? That's strange. What about cheese? Do you have any cheese?
A No, I don't sell cheese, either.
- B No cheese? That's incredible! OK. Now, I want some pizza, but I'm sure you don't sell pizza, do you?
A Yes, sir. Pizza with mushrooms, pizza with cheese and ham, pizza with sausage, and pizza with tomatoes.
- B Wow! Can I have some ... pizza with cheese and ham, please?
A Sorry, sir. Usually I have pizza, but not on Thursdays. Today's Thursday.
- B I see. I don't suppose you have any bread.
A You're right.
B Pardon?
A You're right. There isn't any bread.
- B Tell me. Do you do a lot of business?
A Oh, yes, sir. The shop's open all the time.
- B What do people buy?
A All the things you can see.
- B Well, that's all for me. How much?
A One pound twenty, please.
- B Thank you. Goodbye.
- A See you again soon, sir.
- B (to himself) I don't think so.

Tapescript 51

- a A Have another cream cake, my dear. They're delicious!
B I couldn't. I'm full.
- A Oh, go on!

- B Well, all right. Just one more. That chocolate one.
- b A Yes, please. Who's next?
B Hello. Can I have a chicken and salad sandwich in a brown roll, please?
A Salt and pepper?
B Yes, please.
A Anything else?
B Yes. An apple and a mineral water.
A Two, three ... three pounds forty.
B Thanks.

M = Mum T = Tom L = Lily

- c M Tom! Lily! You're late. It's 8.30!
T I know, I know. I'm ready.
M Where's Lily?
T In the bathroom, I think.
M Still? Lily? Lily?
L Yes, Mum?
M Come on! It's 8.30.
L OK.
M Are you ready, Tom?
T Yes, Mum.
M Don't yes Mum me.
T No, Mum.
M Right, Lily, are you ready?
L Where's my school bag?
M I don't know. It's *your* bag.
T Here it is.
M Right. See you later. Give me a kiss.
ALL: Bye! See you!
- d A Yes, please.
B Hello. Can I order a take-away, please?
A Yes, sir. What would you like?
B A chicken curry ... not too hot.
A Yes, sir.
B And some rice. That's all.
A Thank you, sir. About fifteen minutes. Is that OK?
B That's fine, thanks.
- M = Mum D = Dad T = Tom L = Lily**
- e D Come on! It's ready.
L Pardon?
D It's ready. Dinner's on the table.
L OK.
T Mm! It smells good! What is it?
D Spaghetti Bolognese. Come and sit down.
M How was school today?
T OK.
M Were you late?
L No. Well, a little.

Same family + G = Grandmother

- f G Mm. That beef was lovely, my dear.
M Thank you, Mother.
D Some more wine, Mum.
G No, thank you, James. One glass is enough for me. Really, Jane, I don't know how you make your gravy, but it's always so delicious!
M You say that every time, Mother, and I tell you how I cook it every time. It's always the same way. Meat juices and vegetable juices. Now, Mother, what about some dessert? There's fruit salad or apple pie and cream. What would you like?
G Well, just a little, then.
M Which one?
G Both, of course.

Tapescript 52

- A Good evening. Can I help you?
B Yes, please. Could I have a room for the night?
A Certainly. A single room or a double?
B Single, please.
A Would you like a room with a shower or a bath?

- B A shower. How much is the room?
A £72 for the room and breakfast. Would you like an evening meal?
B No, thanks. Just breakfast. Can I pay by credit card?
A Yes, of course. We take Visa and Access. Could you sign the register, please?
B Yes, sure. Do you want my address, too?
A No. Just a signature. Do you have any luggage?
B Just this one bag.
A Here's your key. Your room number is 311. I hope you enjoy your stay.
B Thanks.

UNIT 10

Tapescript 53

The country is cheaper than the city.
The country is safer than the city.
The city is noisier than the country.
The country is healthier than the city.
The city is more expensive than the country.
The city is more interesting than the country.
The city is better than the country.

Tapescript 54

- a A The country is quieter than the city.
B Yes, that's true. The city is much noisier.
- b A New York is safer than London.
B No, it isn't. New York is much more dangerous.
- c A The streets of New York are cleaner than the streets of Paris.
B No, they aren't. They're much dirtier.
- d A Paris is bigger than Madrid.
B No, it isn't. It's much smaller.
- e A Madrid is more expensive than Rome.
B No, it isn't. Madrid is much cheaper.
- f A The buildings in Rome are more modern than the buildings in New York.
B No, they aren't. They're much older.
- g A The Underground in London is better than the Metro in Paris.
B No, it isn't! The Underground is much worse.

Tapescript 55

- F Why did you leave? You had a good job in London.
A Yes, but I've got a better job here.
F And you had a beautiful flat in London.
A Well, I've got a house here.
F Really? How many bedrooms has it got?
A Three. And it's got a garden. It's nicer than my flat and it's cheaper. Everything is much cheaper here.
F But you haven't got any friends!
A I've got a lot of friends here. Everybody is very friendly. People are much friendlier than in London.
F But the country's so boring!
A No it isn't. It's much more interesting than London. Seaton has got shops, cinemas, theatres, and parks. And the air is cleaner and the streets are safer.
F OK. OK. Everything is wonderful! So when can I visit you?

Tapescript 56

- a Seaview is the most expensive house.
b Park House is the most modern house.
c Seaview is the biggest house.

- d Seaview has got the biggest garden.
e Park House is the nearest to the town centre.
f Park House is the farthest from the sea.

Tapescript 57a

- a A The Ritz is a very expensive hotel.
B Yes, it's the most expensive hotel in London.
- b A Hambledon is a very pretty village.
B Yes, it's the prettiest village in England.
- c A Everest is a very high mountain.
B Yes, it's the highest mountain in the world.
- d A Meryl Streep is a very popular actress.
B Yes, she's the most popular actress in America.
- e A Mr Clark is a very funny teacher.
B Yes, he's the funniest teacher in our school.
- f A Maria is a very intelligent student.
B Yes, she's the most intelligent student in our class.
- g A This is a very easy exercise.
B Yes, it's the easiest exercise in the book.

Tapescript 57b

- a The Ritz is a very expensive hotel.
b Hambledon is a very pretty village.
c Everest is a very high mountain.
d Meryl Streep is a very popular actress.
e Mr Clark is a very funny teacher.
f Maria is a very intelligent student.
g This is a very easy exercise.

Tapescript 58a

farm factory traffic bridge car park
theatre Underground tram concert river

Tapescript 58b

lake mountains buildings statue
village cottage

Tapescript 59a

Oh, it was terrible! At first it was fine. I drove out of the garage, along the road, and under the bridge. Then I drove past the pub, up the hill, and down the hill. Everything was still OK. But then I drove over the river – and – and – I turned *left* not *right* and I went through the hedge, and into the lake! Oh, it was terrible!

Tapescript 59b

Go out of the school and turn left. Walk along Station Road past the railway station and the bank. Turn left again at the traffic lights and walk over the bridge and up the hill. Turn right into Park Avenue. My house is the first on the left. It's number fifty. It takes ten minutes.

UNIT 11

Tapescript 60

P = Peter M = Mary

- P Gosh! All these people, and I don't know any of them!
M Don't worry! First things first. What would you like to drink?
P A glass of wine, please. Thank you. Could you tell me one or two names?
M Of course. Right. Can you see that man over there, sitting at the table? His name's Paul and he's really nice. He's a musician and he works in LA.

- P Sorry, where?
 M Los Angeles.
 P Uh huh.
 M And he's talking to Kathy. She's on the other side of the table. She's wearing a red and white T-shirt. Kathy's very interesting. She has an art gallery in London, she's incredibly rich, and she lives in a beautiful house. Married, unfortunately for you.
 P Yes.
 M And then on Kathy's right there's Suzie. She's drinking some wine. She's one of my oldest friends. We were at school together.
 P And what does she do?
 M She's a writer, actually.
 P Oh! What does she write?
 M She writes children's stories. Not very successful ones, but never mind. Now, she's talking to Alex. Alex is smoking a cigar, and Alex travels all over the world. He's a film producer.
 P And who are the children?
 M They're Suzie's girls, Laura and Ellie. They go to St Mary's School. Do you know it?
 P Yes, I do.
 M And they're eating crisps and dropping them all over the carpet, aren't you?

Tapescript 61

- a A Excuse me! Is this your ball?
 B No, it isn't mine. It's his.
 b A Is this yours?
 C No, it isn't mine. It's hers.
 c A Excuse me! Is this your ball?
 D No, it isn't mine. I think it's theirs.
 d A Hello. Is this yours?
 F No, it isn't ours. It's the dog's!

Tapescript 62

- a Who's on the phone?
 b I'm going to the pub. Who's coming?
 c There's a ten-pound note here. Whose is it?
 d This is a good book. Who's reading it?
 e Wow! Look at that sports car. Whose is it?
 f I found these on the floor. Whose clothes are they?
 g Who's that standing near the door? That man with glasses.
 h Who's your favourite football team?

Tapescript 63

bread head
 steak wake
 lamb ham
 lose shoes
 sign wine
 half laugh

soap hope
 when again
 near beer
 suit boot
 wait late
 heart part

meat feet
 dead said
 hair wear
 war door
 ball Paul
 list kissed

Tapescript 64

Wonderful tonight by Eric Clapton

It's late in the evening
 She's wondering what clothes to wear.
 She puts on her make-up,
 Then brushes her long blond hair.
 And then she asks me,
 'Do I look all right?'
 And I say 'Yes,
 You look wonderful tonight.'
 We go to a party
 And everyone turns to see
 This beautiful lady
 That's walking around with me.
 And then she asks me,
 'Do you feel all right?'
 And I say 'Yes,
 I feel wonderful tonight.'
 I feel wonderful
 Because I see
 The lovelight in your eyes.
 And the wonder of it all
 Is that you just don't realize
 How much I love you.
 It's time to go home now
 And I've got an aching head.
 So I give her the car keys,
 She helps me to bed.
 And then I tell her
 As I turn out the light,
 I say 'My darling,
 You were wonderful tonight.'

Tapescript 65

- a A Can I help you?
 B No, thanks. I'm just looking.
 b A Can I help you?
 B Yes, I'm looking for a jumper.
 A What colour are you looking for?
 B Blue.
 A What size are you?
 B Medium.
 A What about this one?
 B No, I don't like the colour.
 A This one's a bit darker.
 B Mm, that's nice.
 B Can I try it on?
 A Yes, the changing rooms are over there.
 c A Is it the right size?
 B It's a bit too big.
 d A Is it the right size?
 B Yes, it feels fine.
 e B Have you got something bigger?
 A That's the last we've got, I'm afraid.
 B I'll leave it, thanks.
 f B How much is it?
 A £19.99.
 B I'll have it, please.
 A Thank you. How would you like to pay?
 B By credit card.

UNIT 12

Tapescript 66

Gemma

When I grow up I'm going to be a ballet dancer. I love dancing. I go dancing three times a week. I'm going to travel all over the world and I'm going to learn French and Russian because I want to dance

in Paris and Moscow. I'm not going to marry until I'm 35 and then I'm going to have two children. I'd like first a girl and then a boy – but maybe I can't plan that! I'm going to work until I'm 75. I'm going to teach dancing and I'm going to open a dance school. I like planning my future – it's very exciting!

Miss Black

When I retire – well – first – er, two things – I'm going to learn Russian – I can already speak French, Italian, and German and I want to learn another language – and I'm going to learn to drive. I never had time to learn when I was younger. Then I'm going to buy a car and a tent and travel all over the world. I'm not going to wear boring clothes, I'm tired of blouses and skirts – I'm going to wear jeans and tracksuits all the time. And when I come home from my travels I'm going to write a book and become a TV star and tell everyone about the places I visited and the people I met.

Tapescript 67a

- A What's she going to be?
 B A ballet dancer.
 A What's she going to do?
 B Travel all over the world.

Tapescript 67b

- A Why is she going to learn French and Russian?
 B Because she wants to dance in Paris and Moscow.
 A When is she going to marry?
 B Not until she's thirty-five.
 A How many children is she going to have?
 B Two.
 A How long is she going to work?
 B Until she's seventy-five.
 A What is she going to teach?
 B Dancing.

Tapescript 68

- a Take an umbrella. It's going to rain.
 b Hurry up! We're going to miss the bus!
 c I'm very worried about this exam. I know I'm going to fail.
 d Jack is studying very hard. I know he's going to pass.
 e Careful! You're going to drop the plates!
 f Look at all that wine and food! They're going to have a party.
 g There's my sister and her boyfriend. Yuk! They're going to kiss.
 h A Oh dear! I'm going to sneeze. Aaattishoo!
 B Bless you!

Tapescript 69

B = Miss Black A = Arthur

- B First I'm going to Holland.
 A Why?
 B To see the tulips, of course!
 A Oh yes! How wonderful! Where are you going after that?
 B Well, then I'm going to Norway to see the midnight sun.

Tapescript 70

- A What's the weather like today?
 B It's cold and snowing.
 A What was it like yesterday?
 B Oh, it was cold and cloudy.

Tapescript 71

- A It's a lovely day! What shall we do?
B Let's play tennis!
A It's raining again! What shall we do?
B Let's stay at home and watch a video.

Tapescript 72

- A It's a lovely day! What shall we do?
B Let's play tennis!
A Oh, no! It's too hot to play tennis.
B Well, let's go to the beach.
A OK. I'll get my swimming costume.
A It's raining again! What shall we do?
B Let's stay at home and watch a video.
A Oh no! We watched a video last night.
B Well, let's go to the cinema.
A OK. What's on at the Odeon cinema?

UNIT 13

Tapescript 73

- A When did the Berlin Wall come down?
B 1989.
- A When did the first American walk on the moon?
B 1969.
- A Where are the Andes mountains?
B In South America.
- A Who did the actress Elizabeth Taylor marry twice?
B Richard Burton.
- A Who won the 100 metres in the Seoul Olympics?
B Carl Lewis.
- A How many countries are there in the European Community?
B Twelve.
- A How much does an African elephant weigh?
B Five to seven tonnes.
- A How fast does Concorde fly?
B 2,500 kilometres an hour.
- A How far is it from London to New York?
B Six thousand kilometres.
- A How old was Charlie Chaplin when he died?
B Eighty-eight.
- A What languages do Swiss people speak?
B German, French, Italian, and Romansch.
- A What did Columbus discover in 1492?
B America.
- A What sort of music did Elvis Presley play?
B Rock 'n' roll.
- A What happens at the end of the story *Cinderella*?
B She marries the prince.
- A What happened in Chernobyl in 1986?
B There was a nuclear explosion.
- A Why do birds migrate?
B Because the winter is cold.
- A Which newspaper does Queen Elizabeth read?
B *The Times*.
- A Which language has the most words?
B English.

Tapescript 74

- Why do you want to go?
- Where does she work?
- She works in a bank.
- Who won the match?
- Did she marry him?
- How old is she?
- Johnny Page played the guitar.

- 8 Where did you go last night?

Tapescript 75

It was about two o'clock in the morning, and ... and suddenly I woke up. I heard a noise. I got out of bed and went slowly downstairs. There was a light in the living room. I listened very carefully. I could hear two men speaking quietly. 'Burglars!' I thought. 'Two of them!' Well, I was really frightened, so I went back upstairs, and immediately phoned the police from my bedroom. The police arrived quickly. They opened the front door with a special key and went into the living room. Then they came upstairs. 'It's all right now, sir,' they explained. 'We turned the television off for you!'

Tapescript 76

- A What's the title of the book?
B It's called *The Monkey's Paw*.
A What sort of story is it?
B It's a horror story.
A Who are the main characters?
B Old Mr and Mrs White and their son, Herbert.
A What's it about?
B A monkey's paw which is magic. It can give people three wishes, but the wishes don't bring happiness.
A What happens in the end?
B The son dies in an accident at work.
A Did you enjoy it?
B Yes, I did. It was very interesting.
A Do you recommend it?
B Yes, I do.

Tapescript 77

The Girl with Green Eyes
(see page 96)

Tapescript 78a

This is a British Rail talking timetable, giving train times from London King's Cross to Newcastle, Monday to Friday. For weekend train times, phone 071 276 2477. Here are the departure times from King's Cross and the arrival times in Newcastle.

| | |
|---------------|------|
| 0700 arriving | 1005 |
| 0840 arriving | 1130 |
| 0950 arriving | 1245 |
| 1130 arriving | 1437 |
| 1200 arriving | 1455 |
| 1245 ... | |

Tapescript 78b

- A Good morning. Can you tell me the times of trains back from Newcastle, please?
B Afternoon, evening? When do you want to come back?
A About 5 o'clock this afternoon.
B About 5 o'clock. Right. Let's have a look. There's a train that leaves at 4.45, and there's another one at 5.25.
A And what time do they get in?
B Back at King's Cross at 7.15 and 8.20.
A Thanks a lot.

Tapescript 78c

- A Hello. I'd like a ticket to Newcastle, please.
B Single or return?
A Return, please.
B Day return or period return?
A I want to come back this evening, so a day return.
B How do you want to pay?

- A Cash, please.
B Forty-eight pounds fifty, please.
A Twenty, forty, sixty pounds.
B Here's your change and your ticket.
A Thank you.

Tapescript 78d

This is a British Rail announcement. The train from Edinburgh arrives on platform eight at 0830. Edinburgh train, platform eight, 0830. The train from Hertford arrives on platform six at 0835. Hertford train, platform six, 0835. The train from Newcastle arrives on platform fifteen at 0845. The train is forty minutes late. Newcastle train, platform fifteen, 0845. Forty minutes late. The train from Darlington arrives on platform nine at 0855. Darlington train, platform nine, 0855. The train to Peterborough is on platform twelve, departs 0825. The train to Peterborough, platform twelve, 0825. The train to Newcastle is on platform seventeen, departs 0840. The train to Newcastle, platform seventeen, 0840. The train to York is on platform five, departs 0900. The train to York, platform five, 0900.

UNIT 14

Tapescript 79a

- A I've been to England. I haven't been to Scotland.
B I've been to the United States. I've never been to Mexico.
C I haven't been to any of the countries!

Tapescript 79b

- A Have you ever been to Ireland?
B No, I haven't.
A Have you ever been to Scotland?
B Yes, I have.
A When did you go?
B Two years ago.

Tapescript 80

Yes, I've lived in a foreign country. In Japan, actually. I lived in Osaka for a year. I really enjoyed it. I loved the food! Now, then. Have I worked for a big company? It depends what you mean by big. I've worked in a factory, and I've worked in an office, but they weren't very big companies. I've never stayed in an expensive hotel, but I'd love to one day. A big room, breakfast in bed, it'd be lovely! I've been in a jumbo jet. I went in one when I flew to Japan. The plane stopped in Moscow. The flight was about twelve or thirteen hours! Cooking. Mmm. Well, I can't cook very well, but once when I was a boy scout I cooked for us all. There were about thirty of us, and I made beans on toast. It was delicious because everyone was so hungry. I've never met anyone famous, and I don't really want to. Mm, I've only ever seen one Shakespeare play, and that was Hamlet. I saw it while I was at school. We studied it for an exam. I've driven a tractor. When I was seventeen, I worked on a farm for a few months. I've been to hospital a few times. When I was six, I broke my leg, and when I was twenty-two I had a car accident, and I was in hospital for a couple of weeks. And I have never, ever, in my whole life, never won a competition.

Tapescript 81

L = Lilian F = Father

- L We're having a lovely time, Dad.
F I'm sure there's a lot to do!
L There is! We've been for a walk in Central Park. It's so big! Everything here is big. And we've climbed the Empire State Building. The view was fantastic. We haven't been to Greenwich Village yet, and we haven't been to Chinatown, either. We're going to do that tomorrow.
F Have you seen the Statue of Liberty yet?
L Oh, yes, we have. We've just had a helicopter tour of the city, and we flew really close to it.
F What about a show? Have you seen a show on Broadway yet?
L No, we haven't. We're going to one on our last night here, but we haven't decided what to see yet.

Tapescript 82a

Three telephone tones

- engaged
- dialling tone
- ringing

Tapescript 82b

- a A Hello. 276694.
B Hello. Can I speak to Jo, please?
A This is Jo speaking.
B Oh! Hi, Jo. This is Pat. I'm just ringing to check that Sunday is still OK for tennis.
A Yes, that's fine.
B Great! See you on Sunday at 10. Bye!
A Bye!
- b A Hello. Chesswood 4576.
B Hello. Is that Liz?
A No, it isn't. I'll just get her.
C Hello. Liz here.
B Hi, Liz. It's Tom. Listen! I'm having a party on Saturday. Can you come?
C Oh, sorry, Tom. I can't. I'm going to my cousin's wedding.
B Never mind. Perhaps next time. Bye!
C Bye.
- c A Hello. Barclays Bank, Chesswood.
B Hello. Can I speak to the manager, please?
A Hold on. I'll put you through ... I'm afraid Mr Smith isn't in his office. Can I take a message?
B Don't worry. I'll ring back later.
A All right. Goodbye.
B Goodbye.

Tapescript 82c

Directory Enquiries. Which town, please?
Can I have the surname, please?
And the initial?
What's the address?
Thank you. The number you want is 0423 287221.

UNIT 15

Tapescript 83

- A Hi Barbara! Did you and Raymond enjoy Margo's dinner party?
B No, we didn't. It was awful!
A What about the food?
B Oh, the food was disgusting! We hated it. We had Duck and Banana Curry!

- A Duck and what?! Ugh!
B I know. I don't like duck and Ray doesn't like bananas!
A And their friends? Tell me about their friends. Were they nice?
B Oh, Alice! They were friendly, but they were so boring! They talked for three hours about their house and their dog and their dishwasher! And they didn't ask one question about us. We said very little, only 'Yes?' and 'No!'
A Oh dear! What a terrible evening!

Tapescript 84

She's leaving home by the Beatles

Wednesday morning at five o'clock as the day begins,
Silently closing the bedroom door
Leaving the note that she hoped would say more
She goes downstairs to the kitchen
Clutching her handkerchief
Quietly turning the backdoor key
Stepping outside she is free.

She
We gave her most of our lives
is leaving
Sacrificed most of our lives
home.
We gave her everything money could buy.
She's leaving home after living alone for so many years.

Father snores as his wife gets into her dressing gown,
Picks up the letter that's lying there
Standing alone at the top of the stairs
She breaks down and cries to her husband,
'Daddy, our baby's gone.
Why would she treat us so thoughtlessly?
How could she do this to me?'

She
We never thought of ourselves
is leaving
Never a thought of ourselves
home.
We struggled hard all our lives to get by.
She's leaving home after living alone for so many years.

Friday morning at nine o'clock she is far away
Waiting to keep the appointment she made
Meeting a man from the motor trade.

She
What did we do that was wrong?
is having
We didn't know it was wrong.
fun.
Fun is the one thing that money can't buy.
Something inside that was always denied for so many years.
She's leaving home. Bye bye.

Tapescript 85

- 1 A Can I help you?
B Yes. Can I change this jumper please? I bought it last week and it's too small.
A Have you got the receipt?
B No. I'm sorry, I've lost it.
A Oh dear! You have to give us the receipt. We can't change anything without a receipt.
B But ... !
- 2 A Can I send this parcel to Greece, please?
B Yes, of course. That's £3.50. Thank you. Have you filled in the customs form?
A Customs form? What customs form?

- B You have to fill in a customs form when you send a parcel overseas.
A Can you give me a form then, please?
B No, I don't have any. They're over there on that table.
A Sorry? Where?
B Over there. They're the green forms.
- 3 A That's £104.50 altogether. How do you want to pay?
B Can I pay by cheque?
A Yes, but have you got any identification? You have to show identification with cheques over £100.
B Oh dear! Let me see. I've got a photo of me and my aunt at the seaside.
A No, no, no. Have you got a passport or a driving licence?
B No, I haven't.
A Then I'm afraid we can't take your cheque.
B But ... !
- 4 A What's the purpose of your visit?
B Oh, I'm going to study English and have a holiday.
A And how long are you staying?
B For a month.
A And where are you going to stay? What's your address?
B I'm not sure. The language school is going to find me somewhere to stay.
A Mmm! You have to give us an address. You can't enter the country without an address!
B But ... !

Word list

Here is a list of some of the words
from the units of *Headway*
Elementary.

Write the translation.

adj = adjective
adv = adverb
conj = conjunction
opp = opposite
pl = plural
prep = preposition
pron = pronoun
pp = past participle
n = noun
v = verb

UNIT 1

and (*conj*) /ənd/
apple (*n*) /æpl/
bag (*n*) /bæg/
brother (*n*) /brʌðə(r)/
camera (*n*) /kæmrə/
child (*n*) (*pl* children)
/tʃaɪld/
country (*n*) /kʌntri/
daughter (*n*) /dɔ:tə(r)/
dictionary (*n*) /dɪkʃənəri/
doctor (*n*) /dɒktə(r)/
envelope (*n*) /envələʊp/
evening (*n*) /i:vnɪŋ/
first (*adj*) /fɜ:st/
flat (*n*) /flæt/
have (*v*) /hæv/
house (*n*) /haʊs/
international (*adj*)
/ɪntənæʃənl/
job (*n*) /dʒɒb/
key (*n*) /ki:/
language (*n*) /læŋgwɪdʒ/
learn (*v*) /lɜ:n/
letter (*n*) /letə(r)/
live (*v*) /lɪv/
magazine (*n*) /mægəzi:n/
map (*n*) /mæp/
married (*adj*) /mæriəd/
name (*n*) /neɪm/
newspaper (*n*)
/nju:spetpə(r)/
notebook (*n*) /nəʊtbʊk/
orange (*n*) /ɒrɪndʒ/
people (*n*) /pi:pl/
postcard (*n*) /pəʊstkɑ:d/
sister (*n*) /sɪstə(r)/
son (*n*) /sʌn/
south (*n*) /saʊθ/
stamp (*n*) /stæmp/
student (*n*) /stju:dənt/
suitcase (*n*) /su:tkeɪs/
surname (*n*) /sɜ:neɪm/

teacher (*n*) /ti:tʃə(r)/
thank you/thanks
/θæŋk ju:, θæŋks/
ticket (*n*) /tɪkɪt/
want (*v*) /wɒnt/

UNIT 2

address (*n*) /ədres/
aunt (*n*) /ɑ:nt/
beautiful (*adj*) /bjʊ:tɪfl/
big (*adj*) /bɪg/
book (*n*) /bʊk/
boyfriend (*n*) /bɔɪfrend/
cheap (*adj*) /tʃi:p/
cheese (*n*) /tʃi:z/
chicken (*n*) /tʃɪkɪn/
coffee (*n*) /kɒfi/
cold (*adj*) /kəʊld/
cup (*n*) /kʌp/
difficult (*adj*) /dɪfɪkəlt/
drink (*v*) /drɪŋk/
easy (*adj*) /i:zi/
expensive (*adj*)
/ɪkspensɪv/
family (*n*) /fæməli/
father (*n*) /fɑ:ðə(r)/
food (*n*) /fu:d/
friendly (*adj*) /frendli/
good (*adj*) /gʊd/
grandfather (*n*)
/grændfɑ:ðə(r)/
grandmother (*n*)
/grændmʌðə(r)/
ham (*n*) /hæm/
happy (*adj*) /hæpi/
holiday (*n*) /həʊlədɪ/
home (*n*) (at home)
/həʊm/
horrible (*adj*) /hɒrəbl/
hot (*adj*) /hɒt/
husband (*n*) /hʌzbənd/
ice-cream (*n*) /aɪs kri:m/
lovely (*adj*) /lʌvli/
milk (*n*) /mɪlk/
mineral water (*n*)
/mɪnərəl wɔ:tə(r)/
morning (*n*) /mɔ:nɪŋ/
mother (*n*) /mʌðə(r)/
nephew (*n*) /nefju:/
new (*adj*) /nju:/
nice (*adj*) /naɪs/
niece (*n*) /ni:s/
old (*adj*) /əʊld/
or (*conj*) /ɔ:(r)/
orange juice (*n*)
/ɒrɪndʒ dʒu:s/
parents (*n*) /peərənts/
park (*n*) /pɑ:k/
phone number (*n*)
/fəʊn nʌmbə(r)/
photo (*n*) /fəʊtəʊ/
right (*adj*) (*opp* wrong)
/raɪt/
sandwich (*n*) /sænwɪdʒ/
small (*adj*) /smɔ:l/

tea (*n*) /ti:/
today (*adv*) /tədeɪ/
town (*n*) /taʊn/
uncle (*n*) /ʌŋkl/
understand (*v*)
/ʌndəstænd/
weather (*n*) /weðə(r)/
wife (*n*) /waɪf/
work (*n*) (at work)
/wɜ:k/
write (*v*) /raɪt/
wrong (*adj*) /rɒŋ/
young (*adj*) /jʌŋ/

UNIT 3

actor (*n*) /æktə(r)/
afternoon (*n*)
/ɑ:ftənu:n/
arrive (*v*) /əraɪv/
baker (*n*) /beɪkə(r)/
because (*conj*) /bɪkəʊz/
bread (*n*) /bred/
but (*conj*) /bʌt/
car (*n*) /kɑ:(r)/
catch (*v*) (catch a train)
/kætʃ/
certainly (*adv*) /sɜ:tənli/
come (*v*) /kʌm/
cost (*v*) /kɒst/
drive (*v*) /draɪv/
evening (*n*) /i:vnɪŋ/
film (*n*) /fɪlm/
fly (*v*) /flaɪ/
football (*n*) /fʊtbɔ:l/
fortunately (*adv*)
/fɔ:tʃənətli/
go (*v*) /gəʊ/
hairdresser (*n*)
/ˈhedresə(r)/
half (*n*) /hɑ:f/
hospital (*n*) /hɒspɪtl/
hour (*n*) /aʊə(r)/
interpreter (*n*)
/ɪntɜ:prɪtə(r)/
journalist (*n*) /dʒɜ:nəlɪst/
journey (*n*) /dʒɜ:ni/
leave (*v*) /li:v/
like (*v*) /laɪk/
look after (*v*) /lʊk ɑ:ftə(r)/
love (*v*) /lʌv/
make (*v*) /meɪk/
mechanic (*n*) /mekəˈnɪk/
mend (*v*) /mend/
mountain (*n*) /maʊntɪn/
nurse (*n*) /nɜ:s/
pilot (*n*) /paɪlət/
plane (*n*) /pleɪn/
play (*v*) /pleɪ/
receptionist (*n*)
/rɪsepʃənɪst/
sea (*n*) /si:/
see (*v*) /si:/
sell (*v*) /sel/

shop (*n*) /ʃɒp/
shop assistant (*n*)
/ʃɒp əsɪstənt/
singer (*n*) /sɪŋə(r)/
speak (*v*) /spi:k/
summer (*n*) /sʌmə(r)/
take (*v*) /teɪk/
taxi-driver (*n*)
/tæksɪ draɪvə(r)/
teach (*v*) /ti:tʃ/
tired (*adj*) /taɪəd/
train (*n*) /treɪn/
village (*n*) /vɪlɪdʒ/
walk (*v*) /wɔ:k/
week (*n*) /wi:k/
winter (*n*) /wɪntə(r)/

UNIT 4

autumn (*n*) /ɔ:təm/
bad (*adj*) /bæd/
baseball (*n*) /beɪsbɔ:l/
beach (*n*) /bi:tʃ/
bed (*n*) /bed/
bring (*v*) /brɪŋ/
brown (*adj*) /braʊn/
cards (*n*) (play cards)
/kɑ:dz/
chat (*v*) /tʃæt/
colour (*n*) /kʌlə(r)/
computer (*n*)
/kəmputə(r)/
cook (*v*) /kʊk/
crossword (*n*) /krɒswɜ:d/
dance (*v*) /dɑ:ns/
dinner (*n*) /dɪnə(r)/
eat (*v*) /i:t/
exciting (*adj*) /ɪksaɪtɪŋ/
exercise (*n*) (do exercise)
/eksəsaɪz/
favourite (*adj*) /feɪvərɪt/
fish (*n*) /fɪʃ/
flower (*n*) /flaʊə(r)/
friend (*n*) /frend/
game (*n*) /geɪm/
get up (*v*) /get ʌp/
go shopping (*v*)
/gəʊ ʃɒpɪŋ/
go swimming (*v*)
/gəʊ swɪmɪŋ/
here (*adv*) /hɪə(r)/
hobby (*n*) /hɒbi/
ice-skating (*n*)
/aɪs sketɪŋ/
interesting (*adj*)
/ɪntrəstɪŋ/
interview (*v*) /ɪntəvju:/
know (*v*) /nəʊ/
late (*adv*) /leɪt/
listen to (*v*) /lɪsən tu:, tə/
long (*adj*) /lɒŋ/
meet (*v*) /mi:t/
month (*n*) /mʌnθ/
near (*prep*) /nɪə(r)/
never (*adv*) /nevə(r)/

office (n) /'ɒfɪs/
 often (adv) /'ɒfn, 'ɒftən/
 painting (n) /'peɪntɪŋ/
 pub (n) /pʌb/
 red (adj) /red/
 relax (v) /rɪ'læks/
 river (n) /'rɪvə(r)/
 sailing (n) /'seɪlɪŋ/
 short (adj) /ʃɔ:t/
 smoke (v) /sməʊk/
 sometimes (adv) /sʌmtaɪmz/
 song (n) /sɒŋ/
 spring (n) /sprɪŋ/
 start (v) /stɑ:t/
 stay (v) /steɪ/
 suddenly (adv) /sʌdnli/
 summer (n) /sʌmə(r)/
 sunbathe (v) /sʌnbæð/
 take photographs (v) /teɪk fəʊtə'grɑ:fz/
 traffic (n) /'træfɪk/
 tree (n) /tri:/
 usually (adv) /'ju:ʒəli/
 visit (v) /vɪzɪt/
 volleyball (n) /vɒləibɔ:l/
 watch (v) /wɒtʃ/
 wet (adj) /wet/
 windsurf (v) /wɪndzɜ:f/
 yellow (adj) /'jeləʊ/

UNIT 5

also (adj) /ɔ:lsəʊ/
 armchair (n) /ɑ:mtʃeə(r)/
 bath (n) /bɑ:θ/
 bathroom (n) /bɑ:θru:m/
 bedroom (n) /bedru:m/
 behind (prep) /bɪhaɪnd/
 carpet (n) /kɑ:pɪt/
 chemist's (n) /kemɪsts/
 clean (adj) /kli:n/
 clock (n) /klɒk/
 clothes (n) /kləʊðz/
 cooker (n) /kʊkə(r)/
 cupboard (n) /kʌbəd/
 desk (n) /desk/
 dishwasher (n) /dɪʃwɒʃə(r)/
 dog (n) /dɒg/
 during (prep) /dʒuərɪŋ/
 everybody (pron) /evrɪbɒdi/
 famous (adj) /feɪməs/
 fire (n) /faɪə(r)/
 fridge (n) /frɪdʒ/
 garden (n) /gɑ:dn/
 important (adj) /ɪm'pɔ:tənt/
 in front of (prep) /ɪn frʌnt əv/
 king (n) /kɪŋ/
 kitchen (n) /kɪtʃɪn/

lamp (n) /læmp/
 left (adv) (opp right) /left/
 library (n) /laɪbrəri/
 like (prep) /laɪk/
 living room (n) /lɪvɪŋ ru:m/
 meal (n) /mi:l/
 mirror (n) /mɪrə(r)/
 modern (adj) /mɒdn/
 news (n) /nju:z/
 newsagent's (n) /nju:zeɪdʒənts/
 next to (prep) /nekst tu:, tə/
 on (prep) /ɒn/
 other (adj) /əðə(r)/
 palace (n) /pælɪs/
 pen (n) /pen/
 picture (n) /pɪktʃə(r)/
 place (n) /pleɪs/
 plant (n) /plɑ:nt/
 plate (n) /pleɪt/
 police station (n) /pəli:s steɪʃn/
 politician (n) /pə'lɪtɪʃn/
 post box (n) /pəʊst bɒks/
 post office (n) /pəʊst ɒfɪs/
 radio (n) /reɪdɪəʊ/
 right (adv) (opp left) /raɪt/
 sleep (v) /sli:p/
 sofa (n) /səʊfə(r)/
 stereo (n) /sterɪəʊ/
 swimming pool (n) /swɪmɪŋ pu:l/
 table (n) /teɪbl/
 talk (v) /tɔ:k/
 toilet (n) /tɔɪlət/
 wall (n) /wɔ:l/
 washing machine (n) /wɒʃɪŋ məʃi:n/
 while (conj) /waɪl/
 whole (adj) /həʊl/
 window (n) /wɪndəʊ/

UNIT 6

again (adv) /ə'geɪn, ə'geɪn/
 arrival hall (n) /ə'raɪvəl hɔ:l/
 baggage reclaim (n) /bæ'gɪdʒ ri:kleɪm/
 bike (n) /baɪk/
 black (adj) /blæk/
 boarding pass (n) /bɔ:diŋ pɑ:s/
 boring (adj) /bɔ:riŋ/
 (be) born (v) /bɔ:n/
 brilliant (adj) /brɪljənt/
 champion (n) /tʃæmpɪən/
 check (v) /tʃek/
 check-in desk (n) /tʃek ɪn desk/
 cheque (n) /tʃek/
 chess (n) /tʃes/
 count (v) /kaʊnt/

conversation (n) /kɒnvə'seɪʃn/
 dark (adj) /dɑ:k/
 delayed (pp) (be delayed) /dɪleɪd/
 departure lounge (n) /dɪpɑ:ʃə laʊndʒ/
 destination (n) /destɪneɪʃn/
 different (adj) /dɪfrənt/
 draw (v) /drɔ:/
 eye (n) /aɪ/
 flight (n) /flaɪt/
 fluently (adv) /flu:əntli/
 gate (n) (airport) /geɪt/
 genius (n) /dʒi:nɪəs/
 hand luggage (n) /hænd lʌ'gɪdʒ/
 hear (v) /hɪə(r)/
 land (v) /lænd/
 last (adj) (last month/year) /lɑ:st/
 lunch (n) /lʌntʃ/
 match (n) (football) /mætʃ/
 meat (n) /mi:t/
 medicine (n) (study medicine) /medsn/
 nose (n) /nəʊz/
 now (adv) /naʊ/
 party (n) /pɑ:ti/
 passport control (n) /pɑ:spɔ:t kəntrɒl/
 piano (n) /pɪæno/
 player (n) /pleɪə(r)/
 practise (v) /præktɪs/
 ride (v) /raɪd/
 safety belt (n) /seɪftɪ belt/
 smell (v) /smel/
 study (v) /stʌdi/
 teenager (n) /ti:neɪdʒə(r)/
 think (v) /θɪŋk/
 translate (v) /trænzleɪt/
 tray (n) /treɪ/
 type (v) /taɪp/
 under (prep) (under 18 years old) /ʌndə(r)/
 until (conj) (not until) /ʌntɪl/
 use (v) /ju:z/
 wear (v) /weə(r)/
 year (n) /jɪə(r)/
 yesterday (adv) /jestədeɪ/

UNIT 7

abroad (adv) /ə'brɔ:d/
 baby (n) /beɪbi/
 become (v) /bɪkʌm/
 before (prep) /bɪfɔ:(r)/
 borrow (v) /bɒrəʊ/
 bottle (n) /bɒtl/
 buy (v) /baɪ/
 change (v) /tʃeɪndʒ/
 character (n) /kærɪktə(r)/

Christmas (n) /krɪsməs/
 clean (v) /kli:n/
 clerk (n) /kla:k/
 debt (n) /det/
 description (n) /dɪskrɪpʃn/
 die (v) /daɪ/
 earn (v) /ɜ:n/
 Easter (n) /i:stə(r)/
 enjoy (v) /ɪn'dʒɔɪ/
 especially (adv) /ɪspeʃəli/
 experience (n) /ɪkspɪəriəns/
 factory (n) /fæktəri/
 find (v) /faɪnd/
 finish (v) /fɪnɪʃ/
 get (v) (= receive, become) /get/
 give (v) /gɪv/
 great (adj) (writer) /greɪt/
 hard (adj) (life) /hɑ:d/
 hate (v) /heɪt/
 immediately (adv) /ɪmi:diətli/
 kiss (v) /kɪs/
 later (adv) /leɪtə(r)/
 life (n) /laɪf/
 lose (v) /lu:z/
 marry (v) /mæri/
 move (v) /mu:v/
 night (n) /naɪt/
 novel (n) /nɒvəl/
 novelist (n) /nɒvəlɪst/
 over (prep) (over 90 years old) /əʊvə(r)/
 past (n) /pɑ:st/
 politics (n) /pɒlətɪks/
 poor (adj) /pʊə(r), pɔ:(r)/
 popular (adj) /pɒpjələ(r)/
 present (n) /prezənt/
 pretty (adj) /prɪti/
 prison (n) /prɪzn/
 probably (adv) /prɒbəbli/
 real (adj) /rɪəl/
 remember (v) /rɪmembə(r)/
 retire (v) /rɪtaɪə(r)/
 rich (adj) /rɪtʃ/
 sell (v) /sel/
 send (v) /send/
 software (n) /sɒftweə(r)/
 spend (v) /spend/
 still (adv) /stɪl/
 successful (adj) /səkseɪsəl/
 suddenly (adv) /sʌdnli/
 tomorrow (adv) /tə'mɒrəʊ/
 unemployed (adj) /ʌnɪm'plɔɪd/
 video recorder (n) /vɪdɪəʊ rɪkɔ:də(r)/
 war (n) /wɔ:(r)/
 wedding (n) /wedɪŋ/
 win (v) /wɪn/
 wonderful (adj) /wʌndəfəl/

UNIT 8

actress (n) /æktrəs/
afraid (adj) (afraid of) /əfreɪd əv/
alive (adj) /əlaɪv/
angry (adj) /æŋgrɪ/
around (prep) /əraʊnd/
asleep (adj) /əslɪp/
baker (n) /beɪkə(r)/
believe (v) /bɪli:v/
birthday (n) /bɜ:θdeɪ/
biscuit (n) /bɪskɪt/
blue (adj) /blu:/
burglar (n) /bɜ:glə(r)/
businessman/woman (n) /bɪznɪsmən, bɪznɪswʊmən/
cake (n) /keɪk/
call (v) (name) /kɔ:l/
call (n) (telephone) /kɔ:l/
century (n) /sentʃəri/
chef (n) /ʃef/
couple (n) /kʌpl/
cousin (n) /kʌzən/
date (n) /deɪt/
disc jockey (n) /dɪsk dʒɒki/
engaged (v) (get engaged) /ɪŋgeɪdʒd/
exam (n) /ɪgzæm/
fall asleep (v) /fɔ:l əslɪp/
fall in love (v) /fɔ:l ɪn lʌv/
feel (v) /fi:l/
hair (n) /heə(r)/
hamburger (n) /hæmbɜ:gə(r)/
hard (adv) (work hard) /hɑ:d/
hungry (adj) /hʌŋgrɪ/
incredible (adj) /ɪŋkredəbl/
jeans (n) /dʒi:nz/
joke (n) /dʒəʊk/
laugh (v) /lɑ:f, læf/
nervous (adj) /nɜ:vəs/
pink (adj) /pɪŋk/
policeman (n) /pəli:smən/
produce (v) /prəʊdʒu:s/
quickly (adv) /kwɪklɪ/
rain (n) /reɪn/
really (adv) /riəlɪ/
recipe (n) /resəpi/
record (n) (music) /rekɔ:d/
rest (n) (have a rest) /rest/
ring (v) (telephone) /rɪŋ/
romantic (adj) /rəʊmæntɪk/
sailor (n) /seɪlə(r)/
same (adj) /seɪm/
say (v) /seɪ/
season (n) /si:zn/
shy (adj) /ʃaɪ/

sleepy (adj) /sli:pi/
smile (v) /smaɪl/
snow (v) /snəʊ/
soldier (n) /səʊldʒə(r)/
steal (v) /sti:l/
tell (v) /tel/
together (adv) /təgeðə(r)/
travel (v) /trævl/
typewriter (n) /taɪpraɪtə(r)/
upstairs (adv) /ʌpsteəz/
voice (n) /vɔɪs/
wake up (v) /weɪk ʌp/
wait (v) /weɪt/
warm (adj) /wɔ:m/

UNIT 9

aspirin (n) /æsprɪn/
beef (n) /bi:f/
beer (n) /biə(r)/
between (prep) /bɪtwi:n/
bill (n) (restaurant) /bɪl/
box (n) (box of matches) /bɒks/
can (n) (can of beer) /kæn/
cereal (n) /sɪəriəl/
chewing gum (n) /tʃu:ɪŋ ɡʌm/
chocolate (n) /tʃɒklət/
cigarette (n) /sɪɡəret/
city (n) /sɪti/
conditioner (n) /kəndɪʃənə(r)/
cream (n) /kri:m/
credit card (n) /kredit kɑ:d/
crisps (n) (food) /krisps/
double (adj) (double room) /dʌbl/
file (n) (for paper) /faɪl/
fruit (n) /fru:t/
full (adj) /fʊl/
glue (n) /glu:/
grape (n) /ɡreɪp/
gravy (n) /ɡreɪvɪ/
hankie (n) /hæŋki/
honey (n) /hʌni/
ice (n) /aɪs/
jam (n) /dʒæm/
lamb (n) /læm/
list (n) /lɪst/
luggage (n) /lʌɡɪdʒ/
marmalade (n) /mɑ:məleɪd/
match (n) (for a cigarette) /mætʃ/
meal (n) /mi:l/
menu (n) /menju:/
mushroom (n) /mʌʃru:m/
note (n) (money) /nəʊt/

order (v) (a meal) /ɔ:də(r)/
packet (n) /pækɪt/
paint (n) /peɪnt/
pay (v) /peɪ/
petrol (n) /petrəl/
phone card (n) /fəʊn kɑ:d/
phone call (n) /fəʊn kɔ:l/
pork (n) /pɔ:k/
potato (n) /pəteɪtəʊ/
prefer (v) /prɪfɜ:(r)/
quick (adj) /kwɪk/
ready (adj) /redi/
recommend (v) /rekəmend/
rice (n) /raɪs/
roll (n) /rəʊl/
salad (n) /sæləd/
sauce (n) /sɔ:s/
sausage (n) /sɔ:sɪdʒ/
shirt (n) /ʃɜ:t/
sign (v) (sign the register) /saɪn/
single (adj) (single room) /sɪŋɡl/
sit (v) /sɪt/
snack (n) /snæk/
soup (n) /su:p/
steak (n) /steɪk/
strawberry (n) /strɔ:bri/
tomato (n) /təmə:təʊ/
toothpaste (n) /tu:θpeɪst/
vegetable (n) /vedʒtəbl/
yoghurt (n) /jəʊgət/

UNIT 10

bridge (n) /brɪdʒ/
building (n) /bɪldɪŋ/
car park (n) /kɑ: pɑ:k/
castle (n) /kɑ:sl/
concert (n) /kɒnsət/
cottage (n) /kɒtɪdʒ/
cross (v) /krɒs/
cultural (adj) /kʌltʃərəl/
dangerous (adj) /deɪndʒərəs/
dirty (adj) /dɜ:ti/
divide (v) /dɪvaɪd/
driving lesson (n) /draɪvɪŋ lesn/
east (n) /i:st/
end (v) /end/
excitement (n) /ɪksaɪtmənt/
factory (n) /fæktəri/
fast (adj) /fɑ:st/
festival (n) /festəvɪ/
field (n) /fi:ld/
fight (v) /faɪt/
free (v) (free oneself) /fri:/

fresh air (n) /freʃ eə(r)/
healthy (adj) /helθi/
hedge (n) /hedʒ/
hill (n) /hɪl/
independence (n) /ɪndɪpendəns/
independent (adj) /ɪndɪpendənt/
intelligent (adj) /ɪntelɪdʒənt/
join (v) /dʒɔɪn/
lake (n) /leɪk/
leader (n) /li:də(r)/
noisy (adj) /nɔɪzi/
peace (n) /pi:s/
pollution (n) /pəlu:ʃn/
population (n) /pɒpjʊleɪʃn/
public (adj) /pʌblɪk/
quiet (adj) /kwaɪət/
railway station (n) /reɪlweɪ steɪʃn/
river bank (n) /rɪvə bæŋk/
rose (n) /rəʊz/
ruin (n) /ru:ɪn/
rule (n) /ru:l/
safe (adj) /seɪf/
slow (adj) /sləʊ/
spa (n) /spɑ:/
square (n) /skweə(r)/
statue (n) /stætʃu:/
town hall (n) /taʊn hɔ:l/
traffic lights (n) /træfɪk laɪts/
tram (n) /træm/
transport (n) /trænspɔ:t/
underground (n) /ʌndəgraʊnd/
unfriendly (adj) /ʌnfrendli/
unhealthy (adj) /ʌnhelθi/
unusual (adj) /ʌnju:ʒʊəl/
view (n) /vjʊ:/
west (n) /west/
wood (n) /wʊd/

UNIT 11

afraid (adj) (I'm afraid = I'm sorry) /əfreɪd/
anniversary (n) /ænɪvɜ:səri/
beard (n) /bɪəd/
blond (adj) /blɒnd/
boot (n) /bu:t/
brush (v) (hairbrush) /brʌʃ/
changing room (n) /tʃeɪndʒɪŋ ru:m/
colourful (adj) /kʌləfl/
dark (adj) /dɑ:k/
darling (n) /dɑ:lɪŋ/
dead (adj) /ded/

dress (n) /dres/
 earring (n) /'ɛərɪŋ/
 fair (adj) /feə(r)/
 fault (n) /fɔlt/
 floor (n) /flɔ:(r)/
 glasses (n) /glɑ:sɪz/
 good-looking (adj) /'gʊd lʊkɪŋ/
 grey (adj) /greɪ/
 handsome (adj) /hænsəm/
 heart (n) /hɑ:t/
 jacket (n) /'dʒækɪt/
 jumper (n) /'dʒʌmpə(r)/
 make-up (n) /meɪk ʌp/
 medium (adj) /'mi:diəm/
 mess (n) /mes/
 moustache (n) /'məʊstɑ:f/
 photocopier (n) /'fəʊtəʊkəpiə(r)/
 pink (adj) /pɪŋk/
 realize (v) /rɪəlaɪz/
 run (v) /rʌn/
 shoe (n) /ʃu:/
 short (adj) /ʃɔ:t/
 sign (n) /saɪn/
 size (n) /saɪz/
 skirt (n) /skɜ:t/
 slim (adj) /slɪm/
 suit (n) /su:t/
 T-shirt (n) /'ti: ʃɜ:t/
 tall (adj) /tɔ:l/
 tie (n) /taɪ/
 trainers (n) /treɪnəz/
 trousers (n) /traʊəzəz/
 try on (v) (clothes) /traɪ ɒn/

UNIT 12

channel (n) (TV) /tʃænl/
 choose (v) /tʃu:z/
 climb (v) /klaɪm/
 cloudy (adj) /klaʊdi/
 comfortable (adj) /kʌmfətbəl/
 competition (n) /kəmpeɪtɪʃn/
 drop (v) /drɒp/
 dry (adj) /draɪ/
 fail (v) (fail an exam) /feɪl/
 foggy (adj) /fɒgi/
 follow (v) /fɒləʊ/
 future (n) /'fju:tʃə(r)/
 guitar (n) /'gɪtɑ:(r)/
 heavy (adj) /hevi/
 lion (n) /laɪən/
 member (n) /membə(r)/
 midnight (n) /mɪdnaɪt/
 miss (v) (miss the bus) /mɪs/
 motor racing (n) /məʊtə reɪsɪŋ/
 open (v) /əʊpən/

pass (v) (pass an exam) /pɑ:s/
 plan (n) /plæn/
 prepare (v) /prɪpeə(r)/
 programme (n) (TV) /'prəʊgræm/
 rock (n) /rɒk/
 rope (n) /rəʊp/
 route (n) /ru:t/
 side (n) /saɪd/
 star (n) (= a famous person) /stɑ:(r)/
 sneeze (v) /sni:z/
 sunny (adj) /sʌni/
 tent (n) /tent/
 touch (v) /tʌtʃ/
 tracksuit (n) /træksu:t/
 try (v) /traɪ/
 umbrella (n) /ʌmbrelə/
 video (n) /vɪdɪəʊ/
 wash (v) /wɒʃ/
 windy (adj) /wɪndɪ/
 without (prep) /wɪðaʊt/
 worried (adj) /wʌrɪd/

UNIT 13

accident (n) /æksɪdɪnt/
 bored (adj) /bɔ:d/
 carefully (adv) /keəfəli/
 change (n) (= money) /tʃeɪndʒ/
 clearly (adv) /klɪəli/
 cook (n) /kʊk/
 death (n) /deθ/
 deep (adj) /di:p/
 discover (v) /dɪskʌvə(r)/
 downstairs (adv) /daʊnstɛəz/
 end (n) /end/
 explain (v) /ɪkspleɪn/
 fat (adj) /fæt/
 frightened (adj) /fraɪtənd/
 happiness (n) /hæpɪnəs/
 hat (n) /hæt/
 head (n) /hed/
 hide (v) /haɪd/
 history (n) /hɪstri/
 hole (n) /həʊl/
 horror story (n) /'hɒrə stɔ:ri/
 magic (adj) /mædʒɪk/
 migrate (v) /maɪgreɪt/
 monkey (n) /mʌŋki/
 moon (n) /mu:n/
 need (v) /ni:d/
 noise (n) /nɔɪz/
 platform (n) /plætfɔ:m/
 put (v) /pʊt/
 return (n) (ticket) /rɪtɜ:n/
 scream (v) /skri:m/
 silently (adv) /saɪləntli/
 single (n) (ticket) /sɪŋgl/
 sky (n) /skaɪ/

sound (n) /saʊnd/
 special (adj) /speʃl/
 stand up (v) /stænd ʌp/
 timetable (n) /taɪmteɪbl/
 title (n) /taɪtl/
 turn off (v) (the TV) /tɜ:n ɒf/
 weigh (v) /wei/
 wish (n) /wɪʃ/

UNIT 14

active (adj) /æktɪv/
 amazing (adj) /əmeɪzɪŋ/
 company (n) /kʌmpəni/
 customer (n) /kʌstəmə(r)/
 cut (v) /kʌt/
 dial (v) /daɪəl/
 engaged (pp) (telephone) /ɪnɡeɪdʒd/
 exercises (n) (do exercises) /eksəsaɪzɪz/
 face (n) /feɪs/
 fax machine (n) /fæks məʃi:n/
 foot (n) /fʊt/
 glove (n) /glʌv/
 gun (n) /ɡʌn/
 handbag (n) /hændbæg/
 hurt (v) /hɜ:t/
 just (adv) /dʒʌst/
 kitten (n) /kɪtən/
 lamb (n) (=baby sheep) /læm/
 manager (n) /mænɪdʒə(r)/
 marvellous (adj) /mɑ:vələs/
 message (n) /mesɪdʒ/
 neck (n) /nek/
 operator (n) (telephone) /ɒpəreɪtə(r)/
 patient (n) (hospital) /peɪʃənt/
 point (v) /pɔɪnt/
 psychiatrist (n) /saɪkaɪətrɪst/
 puppy (n) /pʌpi/
 rob (v) /rɒb/
 shorts (n) /ʃɔ:ts/
 show (n) /ʃəʊ/
 sock (n) /sɒk/
 stockings (n) /stɒkɪŋz/
 telephone directory (n) /telɪfəʊn daɪrektəri, daɪrektəri/
 tights (n) /taɪts/
 toy (n) /tɔɪ/
 tractor (n) /træktə(r)/
 waitress (n) /weɪtrəs/
 washing-up (n) (do the washing-up) /wɒʃɪŋ ʌp/

widow (n) /wɪdəʊ/
 yet (adv) /jet/

UNIT 15

alone (adv) /ələʊn/
 appointment (n) /əpɔɪntmənt/
 begin (v) /bɪɡɪn/
 break down (v) (car) /breɪk daʊn/
 coat (n) /kəʊt/
 cry (v) /kraɪ/
 customs (n) (airport) /kʌstəmz/
 decide (v) /dɪsaɪd/
 delicious (adj) /dɪlɪʃəs/
 door (n) /dɔ:(r)/
 dressing gown (n) /dresɪŋ gaʊn/
 driving licence (n) /draɪvɪŋ laɪsəns/
 education (n) /edʒʊkeɪʃn/
 enter (v) /entə(r)/
 fill in (v) (fill in a form) /fɪl ɪn/
 forget (v) /fəɡet/
 forgive (v) /fəɡɪv/
 form (n) /fɔ:m/
 fun (n) /fʌn/
 get on (v) (get on with someone) /get ɒn/
 get up (v) (get up in the morning) /get ʌp/
 give up (v) (give up smoking) /ɡɪv ʌp/
 go out (v) (go out with someone) /ɡəʊ aʊt/
 handkerchief (n) /hæŋkətʃi:f/
 hope (v) /həʊp/
 identification (n) /aɪdentɪfɪkəʃn/
 neighbour (n) /neɪbə(r)/
 official (n) /əfɪʃl/
 parcel (n) /pɑ:səl/
 possible (adj) /pɒsəbl/
 post (v) /pəʊst/
 problem (n) /prɒbləm/
 promise (v) /prɒmɪs/
 receipt (n) /rɪsi:t/
 salesman (n) /seɪlzmən/
 seaside (n) /si:saɪd/
 shout (v) /ʃaʊt/
 show (v) /ʃəʊ/
 snore (v) /snɔ:(r)/
 stairs (n) /steəz/
 take off (v) (coat) /teɪk ɒf/
 take off (v) (plane) /teɪk ɒf/
 trip (n) /trɪp/
 turn on (v) (TV) /tɜ:n ɒn/
 uniform (n) /ju:nɪfɔ:m/

Appendix 1

IRREGULAR VERBS

Base form

be
become
begin
break
bring
build
buy
can
catch
choose
come
cost
cut
do
drink
drive
eat
fall
feel
fight
find
fly
forget
get
give
go
grow
have
hear
hit
keep
know
learn
leave
lose
make
meet
pay
put
read /ri:d/
ride
run
say
see
sell
send
shut
sing
sit
sleep
speak
spend
stand
steal
swim
take
tell
think
understand
wake
wear
win
write

Past Simple

was/were
became
began
broke
brought
built
bought
could
caught
chose
came
cost
cut
did
drank
drove
ate
fell
felt
fought
found
flew
forgot
got
gave
went
grew
had
heard
hit
kept
knew
learnt/learned
left
lost
made
met
paid
put
read /red/
rode
ran
said
saw
sold
sent
shut
sang
sat
slept
spoke
spent
stood
stole
swam
took
told
thought
understood
woke
wore
won
wrote

Past Participle

been
become
begun
broken
brought
built
bought
been able
caught
chosen
come
cost
cut
done
drunk
driven
eaten
fallen
felt
fought
found
flown
forgotten
got
given
gone/been
grown
had
heard
hit
kept
known
learnt/learned
left
lost
made
met
paid
put
read /red/
ridden
run
said
seen
sold
sent
shut
sung
sat
slept
spoken
spent
stood
stolen
swum
taken
told
thought
understood
woken
worn
won
written

Appendix 2

VERB PATTERNS

Verb + -ing

| | |
|---|-------------------------|
| like love enjoy hate finish stop | swimming cooking |
|---|-------------------------|

Verb + to + infinitive

| | |
|--|--|
| choose decide forget promise need help hope try want would like would love | to go to work |
|--|--|

Note

Have to for obligation is followed by the infinitive.

I have to go now. Goodbye.

Verb + -ing or to + infinitive

| | |
|----------------|-----------------|
| begin start | raining/to rain |
|----------------|-----------------|

Modal auxiliary verbs

| | |
|--|----------------------|
| can could shall will would | go arrive |
|--|----------------------|

Acknowledgements

The authors would like to thank all the staff at Oxford University Press, especially the editor of this book, Sylvia Wheeldon, for their help, encouragement, and dedication throughout the writing of the series. We are deeply indebted to them.

The publishers and authors are very grateful to the following teachers and institutions for reading and/or piloting the manuscript, and for providing invaluable comment and feedback on the course:

Jirina Babáková
Briony Beaven
Gary Gibson
Jane Hazelton
Anne Heller
Rosa Lenzuen
Cristina Nogueira
Giuseppe Ruggeri
Jeremy Page

The British School, Rome
Centre d'Etude des Langues, Troyes
Dilko English Centre, Istanbul
The English Centre, Istanbul
Formalanguages, Paris
Lingua Sec S.A., Madrid
Rio Cultura, Rio de Janeiro

The publishers would like to thank the following for their permission to reproduce photographs and copyright material:

J Allan Cash Photo Library
Allsport / Michael King / Steve Powell
Barnaby's Picture Library / Alan Smith
Anthony Blake Photo Library
Bridgeman Art Library / Giraudon
Colorific! / Steve Benbow / Robert Garvey / David Burnett / Patrick Ward /
J.P.Nacivet / Dilip Mehta / Alon Reininger / Jeff Slocomb
James Davis Photo Library
Dickens House, London
Philip Dunn Photo Library
Mary Evans Picture Library
Ronald Grant Archive / Robert Harding Picture Library
Jeff Holt / The New Haven Register
Hulton Deutsch Collection
Image Bank / Dann Coffey
Impact Photo Library / Alan Blair / John Arthur / Brian Harris / Steve Moss
Life File / Emma Lee / Tim Johnson / Tim Fisher / Nicola Sutton
Popperfoto
Quadrant Picture Library
Reed Consumer Books / Andrew Whittock
Retrograph Archive
The Royal Collection / Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth II
Shilland and Co Ltd
Frank Spooner / Gamma
Telegraph Colour Library / J.Sims / J.C.Davies
John Thompson Picture Library / Sally Anne Thompson / R Willbie
Topham Picture Source / UPPA
TRIP / T.S.Morse / T.M.J.Fisher / Juliet Highet / Helene Rogers / Dave
Saunders / NASA / M Feeley / A Tjany Rjadno
Valentines of Dundee
John Walmsley Photo Library

Songs

'Wonderful Tonight': words and music by Eric Clapton, © 1977 and 1992
Eric Clapton
'She's Leaving Home': © 1968 by Northern Songs. All rights controlled and administered by MCA Music Ltd under licence from Northern Songs.

Location photography by:

Emily Anderson
Philip Dunn
Rob Judges
Mark Mason

David Simson / DAS Photo
TRIP / T.S. Morse / M Feeley / A Tjany Rjadno
John Walmsley

Studio photography by: Emily Anderson, Mark Mason, John Walmsley

Illustrations by:

Kiran Ahmed / Maggie Mundy Agency
Shirley Barker / Artist Partners
Ken Binder / Satchel Illustrators
Chris Chaisty
Nicki Elson
Michael Hill
David Loftus
Sarah MacDonald
Fiona McVicar / The Inkshed
Oxford Illustrators
Nigel Paige
Rachel Ross

Thanks to the following for their time and assistance:

Andrew Bean at the Dickens House Museum
Cherwell School, Oxford
The Ironbridge Gorge Museum, Telford
Oasis Trading, Oxford
Oxford Scientific
BBC Radio Oxford
The Swan School of English, Oxford

Oxford University Press
Great Clarendon Street, Oxford OX2 6DP

Oxford New York
Athens Auckland Bangkok Bogota Bombay
Buenos Aires Calcutta Cape Town Dar es Salaam
Delhi Florence Hong Kong Istanbul Karachi
Kuala Lumpur Madras Madrid Melbourne
Mexico City Nairobi Paris Singapore
Taipei Tokyo Toronto Warsaw

and associated companies in
Berlin Ibadan

Oxford and Oxford English are trade marks of
Oxford University Press

ISBN 0 19 433992 0 International Edition

© Oxford University Press 1993

First published 1993
Twenty-second impression 1997

No unauthorized photocopying

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Oxford University Press.

This book is sold subject to the condition that it shall not, by way of trade or otherwise, be lent, resold, hired out, or otherwise circulated without the publisher's prior consent in any form of binding or cover other than that in which it is published and without a similar condition including this condition being imposed on the subsequent purchaser.

Printed in Hong Kong

PHONETIC SYMBOLS

Consonants

| | | | |
|----|------|-------|-----------------------|
| 1 | /p/ | as in | pen /pen/ |
| 2 | /b/ | as in | big /bɪg/ |
| 3 | /t/ | as in | tea /ti:/ |
| 4 | /d/ | as in | do /du:/ |
| 5 | /k/ | as in | cat /kæt/ |
| 6 | /g/ | as in | go /gəʊ/ |
| 7 | /f/ | as in | four /fɔ:/ |
| 8 | /v/ | as in | very /veri/ |
| 9 | /s/ | as in | son /sʌn/ |
| 10 | /z/ | as in | zoo /zu:/ |
| 11 | /l/ | as in | live /lɪv/ |
| 12 | /m/ | as in | my /maɪ/ |
| 13 | /n/ | as in | near /nɪə/ |
| 14 | /h/ | as in | happy /hæpi/ |
| 15 | /r/ | as in | red /red/ |
| 16 | /j/ | as in | yes /jes/ |
| 17 | /w/ | as in | want /wɒnt/ |
| 18 | /θ/ | as in | thanks /θæŋks/ |
| 19 | /ð/ | as in | the /ðə/ |
| 20 | /ʃ/ | as in | she /ʃi:/ |
| 21 | /ʒ/ | as in | television /telɪvɪʒn/ |
| 22 | /tʃ/ | as in | child /tʃaɪld/ |
| 23 | /dʒ/ | as in | German /dʒɜ:mən/ |
| 24 | /ŋ/ | as in | English /ɪŋɡlɪʃ/ |

Vowels

| | | | |
|----|------|-------|--------------------|
| 25 | /i:/ | as in | see /si:/ |
| 26 | /ɪ/ | as in | his /hɪz/ |
| 27 | /e/ | as in | ten /ten/ |
| 28 | /æ/ | as in | stamp /stæmp/ |
| 29 | /ɑ:/ | as in | father /fɑ:ðə/ |
| 30 | /ɒ/ | as in | hot /hɒt/ |
| 31 | /ɔ:/ | as in | morning /mɔ:nɪŋ/ |
| 32 | /ʊ/ | as in | football /fʊtbɔ:l/ |
| 33 | /u:/ | as in | you /ju:/ |
| 34 | /ʌ/ | as in | sun /sʌn/ |
| 35 | /ɜ:/ | as in | learn /lɜ:n/ |
| 36 | /ə/ | as in | letter /letə/ |

Diphthongs (two vowels together)

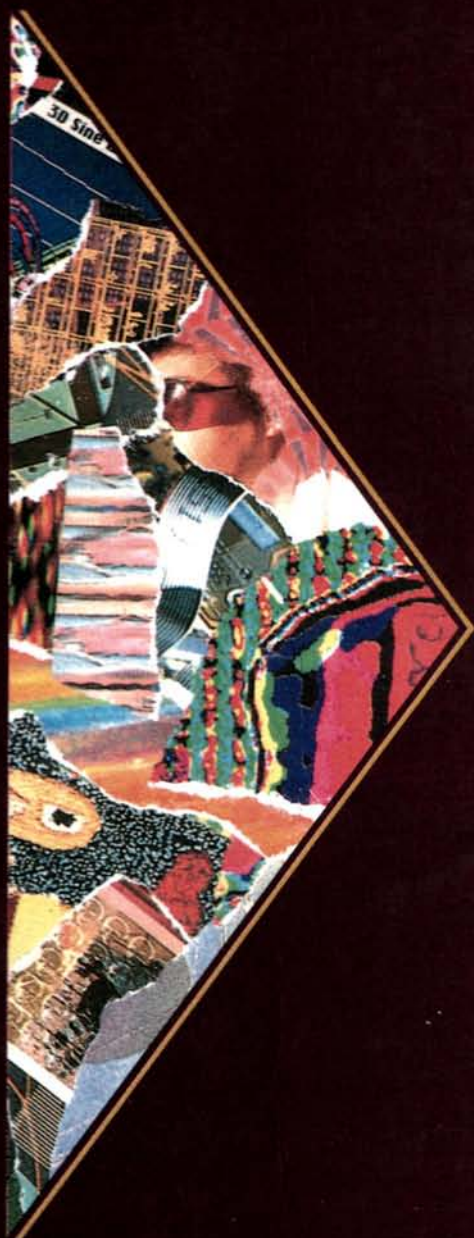
| | | | |
|----|------|-------|-------------|
| 37 | /eɪ/ | as in | name /neɪm/ |
| 38 | /əʊ/ | as in | no /nəʊ/ |
| 39 | /aɪ/ | as in | my /maɪ/ |
| 40 | /aʊ/ | as in | how /haʊ/ |
| 41 | /ɔɪ/ | as in | boy /bɔɪ/ |
| 42 | /ɪə/ | as in | hear /hɪə/ |
| 43 | /eə/ | as in | where /weə/ |
| 44 | /ʊə/ | as in | tour /tʊə/ |

Oxford University Press

ISBN 0-19-433992-0



9 780194 339926



Headway is a multi-level course for adults and young adults who want to use English both accurately and fluently. Grammar and vocabulary are taught and explained thoroughly, and all four language skills are developed systematically. The *Headway* series combines traditional methods of language teaching and more recent communicative approaches. *Headway Elementary* is a first-year coursebook which, along with *Headway Pre-Intermediate*, *Headway Intermediate*, *Headway Upper-Intermediate*, and *Headway Advanced*, provides a comprehensive language teaching series for the 1990s.

Liz and John Soars have many years of experience as teachers and teacher trainers. Both have worked at International House, London, and Liz was one of the chief examiners of the Cambridge/RSA Dip TEFL.

Each level of *Headway* provides approximately 120 hours of teaching. Key features of *Headway Elementary* include:

- Detailed treatment of grammar in two stages: at the beginning of each unit, where it is introduced and practised in a variety of activities, and then in the Grammar Summary at the end of each unit, which is suitable for self-study and revision.
- Systematic vocabulary work with dictionary training.
- Skills work sections for further extension and fluency work.
- Integrated pronunciation work.
- An Everyday English section which practises common expressions in everyday situations.
- A self-check revision section.

The Student's Book also contains reference lists of vocabulary, irregular verbs, verb patterns, phonetic symbols, and tapescripts.

In addition, there is a Teacher's Book with photocopiable activities, two Class Cassettes, and a Workbook with further consolidation exercises, extra input sections, and a writing syllabus. An optional Student's Cassette is available for use with the Workbook.

Headway Elementary is accompanied by *Headway Elementary Pronunciation* and *Headway Elementary Video*.